

C1

C2

C3

C3 Pluriel

C3 Picasso

C4

XSARA
Picasso

C4 Picasso

C5

C6

C8



EXTERIOR

The Xenon dual-function directional headlamps

This function automatically provides you with extra visibility on bends. This lighting is linked with the angular lighting which maximises the area lit at intersections and when parking.

» 88

Glass panoramic roof (Tourer)

This provides you with perfect brightness in the passenger compartment.

Glass sun roof (Saloon)

This also provides you with improved ventilation in the passenger compartment.

» 79-80



Lane departure warning system

This driving assistance device warns you when you unwittingly cross a lane marking.

» 142

Parking assistance (visual + sound)

This function warns you if an obstacle is detected in front of or behind the vehicle.

» 145

Tyre deflation detection

This function checks the pressure of the tyres automatically while driving.

» 111

Remote control key



- A. Key release/storage.
- B. Normal locking of the vehicle (a single press) or deadlocking of the vehicle (two presses in succession).
- C. Guide-me-home lighting.
- D. Unlocking of the vehicle.

» 64

Opening the boot



☞ Press upwards on the lever **E**.

The boot automatically locks when the vehicle is moving at a speed of over 6 mph (10 km/h), even if automatic central locking is deactivated. It is unlocked when a door is opened or when the central locking button is pressed (speed lower than 6 mph (10 km/h)).

» 76-77

Fuel tank



To open the fuel flap, press on the top left part of it, then pull from the edge.

Locking filler cap

☞ Turn the key a quarter turn to lock and unlock the filler cap.

When refuelling, place the cap on hook **F**.
Tank capacity: approximately 71 litres.

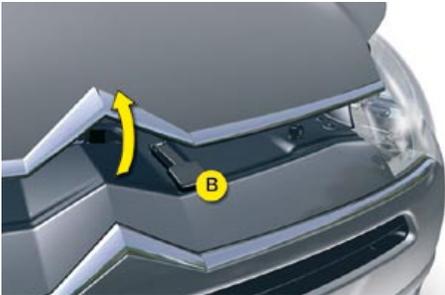
» 81

Bonnet release



This operation should only be performed while the vehicle is stationary.

- ☞ Open the driver's door.
- ☞ Pull release lever **A** to unlock.



- ☞ Lift up lever **B**, then raise the bonnet.

» 150

Spare wheel



Saloon



Tourer

The tools are to be found in a protective holder inside the spare wheel.

» 165

Access to the spare wheel

To access the spare wheel:

- ☞ Lift up the boot floor using the strap (Saloon) or the retractable hook (Tourer).
- ☞ Fold back the boot carpet (Saloon).
- ☞ Attach the hook to the upper section of the boot.
- ☞ To remove the spare wheel, detach the strap then push the wheel forwards, before lifting it out.

Puncture kit



The puncture repair kit is a complete system including a compressor and a setting product.

» 161

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning

This air conditioning system enables you to adjust the comfort levels of the driver and the front passenger independently.

» 48

Audio and communication systems

This equipment benefits from the latest technology: MP3 compatible radio, Bluetooth® hands-free kit, NaviDrive 3D, MyWay.

» 207



Parking space sensor

The "Parking space sensor" function assists you in finding a parking space.

» 143

Electronic parking brake

The electronic parking brake combines automatic engagement when the engine is switched off, and automatic release when the vehicle is set in motion (automatic function activated by default).

Manual locking/unlocking is possible.

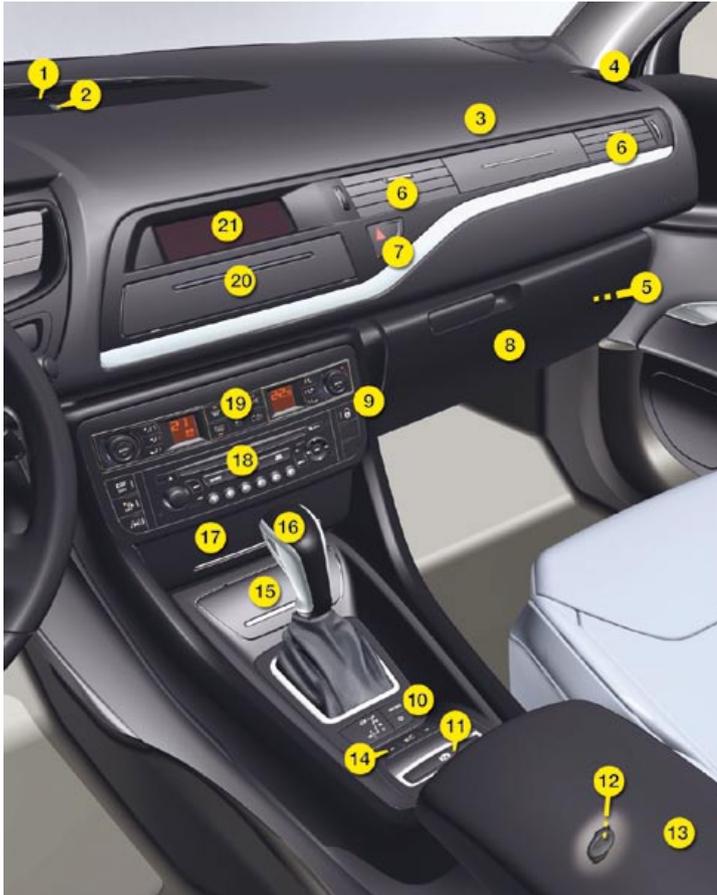
» 123

DASHBOARD

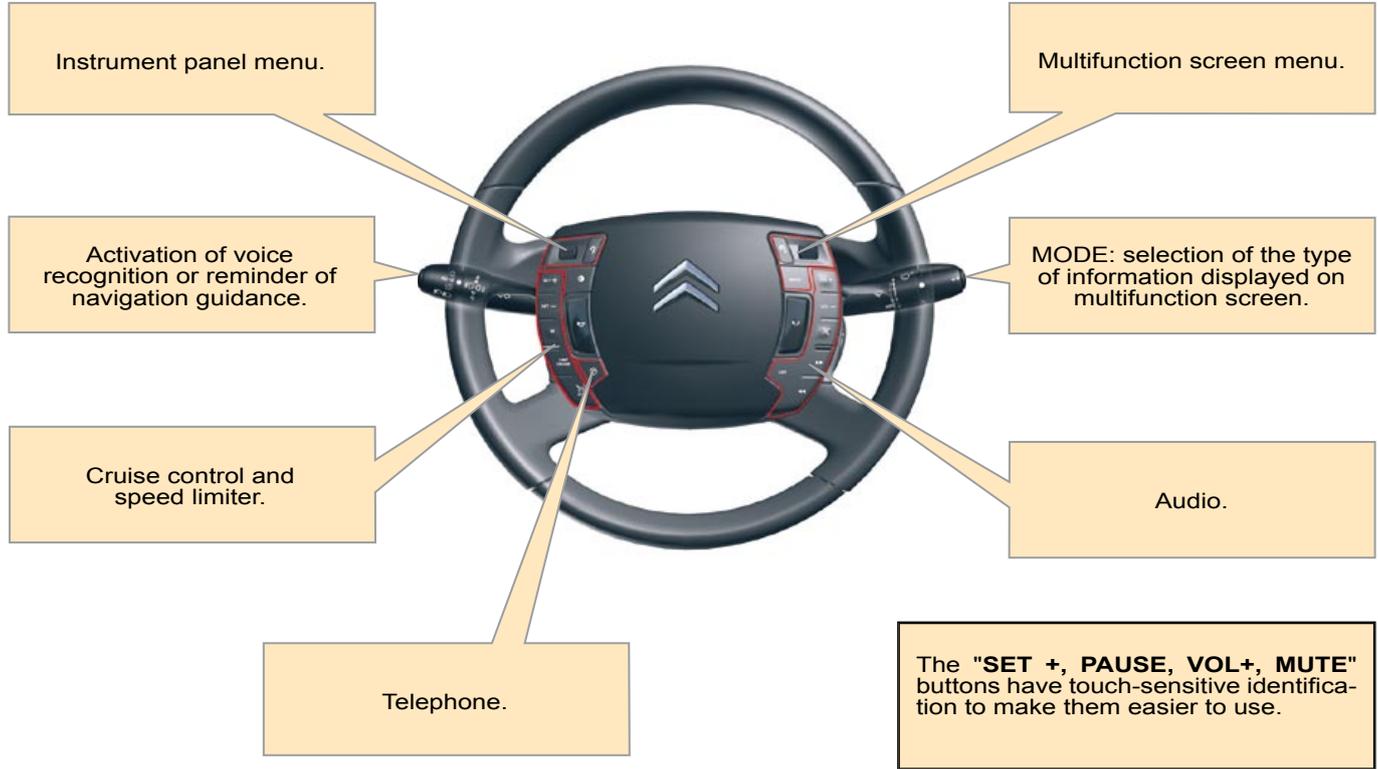


1. Electric windows/rear view mirrors/Child safety controls.
2. Memorisation of driver's seat and rear view mirrors settings.
3. Bonnet release.
4. Controls at the steering wheel:
 - Speed limiter
 - Cruise control
5. Horn.
6. Audio/telematics controls under steering wheel.
7. Driver's airbag.
8. Navigation controls for the audio/telematics and trip computer systems.
9. Driver's air vent.
10. Instrument panel.
11. Driver's air vent.
12. Windscreen wiper/screen wash controls.
13. Ignition switch.
14. ESP/parking assistance/lane departure warning system controls.
15. Steering column adjustment.
16. Knees airbag.
17. Oddments tray or programmable heater controls.
Fusebox access flap.
18. Checks/Anti-intrusion alarm/Parking space sensor controls.
19. Lighting/Direction indicators/Foglamp/Voice recognition controls.
20. Manual headlamp height adjustment.

DASHBOARD



1. Sunlight sensor.
2. Soft diffusion air conditioning adjustment knob.
3. Passenger's airbag.
4. Side window demister.
5. Ignition key in the glovebox:
 - Passenger's airbag activation/deactivation
6. Passenger's air vents.
7. Hazard lamps button.
8. Glovebox:
 - Vehicle document storage
 - Audio-video sockets
9. Doors and boot locking/unlocking control.
Programmable heating indicator.
10. Automatic gearbox SPORT/SNOW mode controls.
11. Electronic parking brake.
12. USB reader socket.
13. Armrest with cup-holder.
14. Suspension controls:
 - Ground clearance adjustment
 - Sport mode
15. Ashtray with lighter.
16. Gear lever.
17. Storage.
18. Audio and telematics system.
19. Air conditioning controls.
20. Storage.
21. Multifunction screen.



Front seats

Manual adjustments



- A. Adjustment of the backrest angle.
- B. Adjustment of the seat height.
- C. Heated seat control.
- D. Longitudinal adjustment of seat.
- E. Adjustment of the backrest lumbar support.

» 56

Electrical adjustments



1. Seat cushion height, angle and slide adjustments.
2. Adjustment of the backrest angle.
3. Adjustment of top of backrest.
4. Adjustment of 1 axis lumbar support.
5. Massage function.
6. Heated seat control.

» 57

Seat belt height adjustment



The **correct position** of the upper seat belt anchorage places the belt across the middle of the shoulder.

To adjust the seat belt for height, compress the control and **slide** it in the desired direction.

» 116



Memorisation

The Memorisation function allows you to programme the driver's seat, rear view mirrors and air conditioning settings.

» 59

Electric exterior rear view mirrors



1. **Selection of rear view mirror:**
 - A. Left hand side.
 - B. Right hand side.
 - C. Foldback/Deployment.
2. **Directional control for mirror selected.**

» 61

Electrochromic interior rear view mirror



Operation

- ☞ Switch on the ignition and press button 4.
 - Warning lamp 3 on: automatic mode.
 - Warning lamp 3 off: automatic mode stopped. The mirror remains in its lightest definition.

» 62

Steering column adjustment



- ☞ Unlock the steering wheel by pushing control A forwards.
- ☞ Adjust the height and the reach of the steering wheel, then lock the position by pulling the lever upwards.

» 63

As a safety precaution, these operations must not be carried out while moving.

Lighting



Ring A



Lamps off.



Automatic lighting of headlamps.



Sidelamps.



Dipped beams/main beams.

☞ Pull the control stalk **towards you** to change between dipped beam and main beam.

Ring B



Front foglamps on.



Front foglamps and rear foglamps on.

» 83

Front wipers



Control positions

- 2 Rapid wipe.
- 1 Normal wipe.
- I Intermittent wipe.
- 0 Off.

One press downwards:

- **AUTO**: Automatic wipe activated.
- Single wipe.

If the ignition has been switched off for around 1 minute, it is necessary to reactivate automatic wiping.

Screen wash

☞ Pull the screen wipe control stalk towards you.

» 89-90

Rear wipers (Tourer)



☞ Rotate control **C** to the desired position.



Off



Intermittent wipe



Screen wash

» 89

VENTILATION

Dual zone automatic air conditioning

Front demisting - deicing.

Adjusting the air flow.

Adjustment of temperature on passenger's side.

Adjustment of air distribution on passenger's side.

Activation/deactivation of air conditioning.

Adjustment of temperature on driver's side.

Driver's side automatic operation.

Adjustment of air distribution on driver's side.

Rear and external rear view mirrors demisting - deicing.

Air recirculation - entry of air from outside.

Passenger's side automatic operation.



It is recommended to use automatic mode by pressing on the "AUTO" button.

Instrument panel



- A. Fuel gauge and low fuel warning lamp.
- B. Cruise control/speed limiter information.
- C. Coolant temperature.
- D. Speed indicator.
- E. Instrument panel.
- F. Mileage recorder.
- G. Trip mileage recorder reset button.
- H. Rev counter.
- I. Engine oil temperature.
- J. Display of automatic gearbox information.

» 22

Hazard warning lamps



The hazard lamps can also be used with the ignition switched off.

» 110

- When the ignition is switched on, the orange and red warning lamps light up.
- When the engine is running, these warning lamps should go out.
- If any warning lamps remain lit, refer to the "Instruments and controls" section.

Tyre deflation detection



The tyre deflation detection system is a driving aid which informs you of the condition of your tyres.

It does not replace either vigilance or responsibility on the part of the driver.

» 111

Economy mode



After switching off the engine, some systems (radio, wipers, electric windows, opening roof, electric seats, telephone, video, interior lighting, motorised tailgate, etc.) are supplied electrically for a maximum of no more than around one hour, so as to avoid discharging the battery.

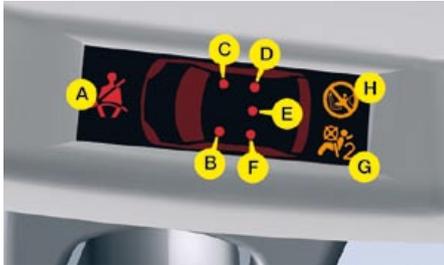
Once this period is over, a message is displayed on the instrument panel screen and the active functions are placed on standby.

These functions will be automatically reactivated when the vehicle is restarted.

This period may be reduced considerably if the battery's state of charge is low.

» 185

Seat belts and front passenger's airbag



The seat belt fastened/unfastened status for each seat category is indicated by the lighting or flashing of the warning lamps linked to each position:

- A. Non-fastened/unfastened front and/or rear seat belts warning lamp.
- B. Front left-hand seat belt warning lamp.
- C. Front right-hand seat belt warning lamp.
- D. Rear right-hand seat belt warning lamp.
- E. Central rear seat belt warning lamp.
- F. Rear left-hand seat belt warning lamp.
- G. Front passenger's airbag deactivation warning lamp.
- H. Front passenger's airbag activation warning lamp.

» 31

Front passenger's airbag deactivation



In order to be able to use a rearwards-facing child seat in the front passenger's seat position, it is imperative to deactivate the passenger's airbag.

For that:

- ☞ With the ignition switched off, insert the key into the switch I.
- ☞ Turn the key to the **"OFF"** position, the passenger's airbag is deactivated.

The front passenger's airbag deactivation warning lamp **G** lights up when the ignition is switched on.

» 119

Child safety



This deactivates the controls in the rear of the vehicle, both for the rear windows and for opening the rear doors from the inside. The electric child safety device is activated by pressing on button **J**.

The activation of the function is indicated by a message on the instrument panel screen and the light on button **J**.

» 109

Electric parking brake



Automatic operation

The electronic parking brake releases automatically and progressively when you press the accelerator. With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off.**



Before leaving the vehicle, check that warning lamp **A (!)** (red) on the instrument panel is permanently lit and that warning lamp **P** (red) on control **B** is lit.



Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.



Manual operation

The **MANUAL** application/release of the parking brake is possible permanently by pulling/pushing control **B**.

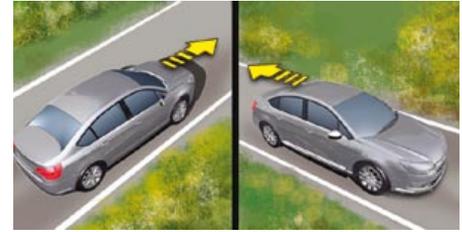


Before leaving the vehicle, check that warning lamp **A (!)** (red) on the instrument panel is permanently lit and that warning lamp **P** (red) on control **B** is lit.



With the engine running, if you leave the vehicle, manually apply the parking brake.

Hill start assist



To aid starting on a gradient, your vehicle is equipped with a system which keeps it immobilised for a short time (about 1 second), the approximate time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This function is only active when:

- The vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal.
- In particular conditions on a slope.
- With the driver's door closed.



Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held in the temporary immobilisation hill start assist phase.

Speed limiter



This system allows you to choose a maximum speed that you do not wish to exceed.



Selection of **"LIMIT"**:
Activation of speed limiter mode.



"SET +": Increase of the maximum speed.



"SET -": Reduction of the maximum speed.



Suspension or resumption of mode.



Deactivation.
The chosen speed is memorised.

The chosen speed must be **higher than 20 mph (30 km/h)**.

» 138

Cruise control



This system allows you to maintain a constant vehicle speed programmed by the driver.



Selection of **"CRUISE"**:
Activation of cruise control mode.



"SET": Memorisation of the speed (system paused).



"SET +": Increase of the memorised speed (system ON).



"SET -": Reduction of the memorised speed (system ON).



Suspension or resumption of mode.



Deactivation.

» 140

Instrument panel display



The speed limiter or cruise control mode is displayed on the instrument panel when selected.



Speed limiter



Cruise control

Cruise control is active on the **higher gears** of the gearbox. The chosen speed must be **higher than 25 mph (40 km/h)**.

Direction indicators - "Motorway" function



☞ Move the stalk briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the resistance point; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

» 110

Automatic gearbox



Positions

- P:** Parking.
- R:** Reverse gear.
- N:** Neutral.
- D:** Automatic mode.
- M:** Sequential mode.

The automatic gearbox offers you:

- **Operation in auto-active mode**, with **automatic** adaptation to your style of driving as well as to the road profile (**Position D**).
- **Operation in sequential mode**, with manual gear changing (**Position M**).
- **Operation in automatic SPORT mode (Position D)** and press button **A**.
- **Operation in automatic SNOW mode (Position D)** and press button **B**.



For safety:

The gear lever can only be disengaged from position **P** if you are pressing the brake pedal.

When a door is opened, an audible signal sounds if the gear selector is not in position **P**.

Before leaving the vehicle, make absolutely certain that position **P** is selected.

» 131

Parking space sensor



You can select the "Parking space sensor" by pressing button **A**, direction indicator activated on the side of the space to be measured, with a speed lower than 6 mph (10 km/h) and at a distance of less than 1.5 m from the space.

The fixed lighting of the warning lamp indicates that this function is selected.

» 143

Parking assistance (visual and sound)



You can activate/deactivate the parking assistance by pressing button **B**. When the parking assistance is inactive, the warning lamp on button **B** is lit up.

» 145

Lane departure warning system



This device is recommended on motorways and dual carriageways, and operates only at speeds above 50 mph (80 km/h).

A press on button **C** activates the function, the warning lamp on the button lights up.

The system does not alert you if one of your direction indicators is operating and for approx. 20 seconds after the direction indicator has stopped.

» 142



PETROL - DIESEL MANUAL OR AUTOMATIC GEARBOX INSTRUMENT PANELS

Panel grouping together the dials and vehicle operation indicator and warning lights.

- A.** Fuel gauge
- B.** Indicator:
 - Coolant temperature
 - Cruise control/Speed limiter information
- C.** Speed indicator
- D.** Rev counter
- E.** Indicator:
 - Engine oil temperature
 - Gear selector position and gear engaged (Automatic gearbox)
- F.** Controls:
 - Lighting rheostat
 - Resetting to zero of trip mileage computer and maintenance indicator
- G.** Instrument panel screen indicating:
 - Depending on the page selected with the left-hand control knob on the steering wheel:
 - Digital speed
 - Trip computer
 - Navigation (guidance) information
 - Display of message alerts
 - Engine oil level check
 - Maintenance indicator
 - Permanently:
 - Trip mileage recorder
 - Total mileage recorder

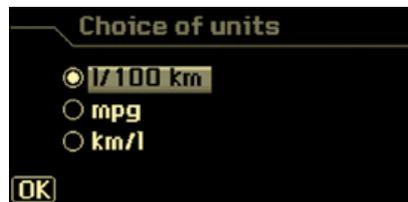
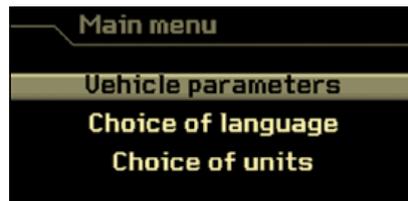


Main menu

The instrument panel **A** is located in the centre of the dashboard.

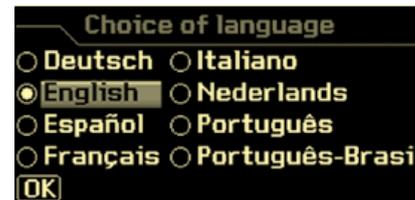
- With the vehicle stationary, you can access the main menu of the instrument panel by quickly pressing on the instrument panel by quickly pressing on the left-hand rotating control **B** on the steering wheel.
- Whilst driving, the message **"Action impossible whilst driving"** is displayed on the instrument panel if you try to open the main menu.

The main menu allows you to programme certain vehicle and instrument panel functions:



"Choice of units" menu

This allows you to choose metric or imperial units.



"Choice of language" menu

This allows you to choose the display and voice recognition language.

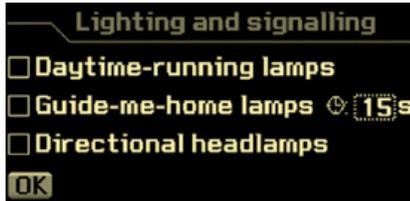


"Vehicle parameters" menu

This allows you to access the parameters relating to:

- The vehicle lighting.
- The comfort levels in the vehicle.

1



"Lighting" menu

Once you have selected this menu, you can:

- ☞ Activate/deactivate the lighting of the daytime-running lamps.
- ☞ Activate/deactivate the guide-me-home lighting and adjust its duration.
- ☞ Activate/deactivate the dual-function Xenon directional headlamps.



"Comfort" menu

Once you have selected this menu, you can:

- ☞ Activate/deactivate the driver's welcome lighting function.
- ☞ Select the unlocking of all the doors or just the driver's door.
- ☞ Activate/deactivate the automatic engaging of the electronic parking brake.

TRIP COMPUTER

System which provides current information concerning the route travelled (range, consumption, etc.)



Data displays



The trip computer is displayed on the instrument panel display.

- ☞ Turn the left-hand dial **A** on the steering wheel to display the various trip computer tabs in succession:
 - the current information tab is displayed in zone **B** of the instrument panel, with:
 - the range,
 - the current consumption,
 - the route "1" tab is displayed in zone **C** of the instrument panel, with:
 - the distance travelled,
 - the average consumption,
 - the average speed,
 - the route "2" tab is displayed in zone **C** of the instrument panel, with:
 - the distance travelled,
 - the average consumption,
 - the average speed,
- for the second route.

Route zero reset



- ☞ When the route required is displayed, press the left-hand dial on the steering wheel for more than two seconds.

The routes "1" and "2" are independent but their use is identical.

Route "1" permits, for example, daily calculations, and route "2" monthly calculations.

1

A few definitions...



Range

(km or miles)

This indicates the distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank in relation to the average consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled.

This figure may increase following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a CITROËN dealer.



Current consumption

(l/100 km or km/l or mpg)

This is the average quantity of fuel consumed during the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).



Average consumption

(l/100 km or km/l or mpg)

This is the average quantity of fuel consumed since the last trip computer zero reset.



Distance travelled

(km or miles)

This indicates the distance travelled since the last trip computer zero reset.



Average speed

(km/h or mph)

This is the average speed calculated since the last trip computer zero reset (ignition on).

Return to the main instrument panel screen display

Successive rotations of the left-hand control knob on the steering wheel allow you to return to the main instrument panel screen display (vehicle speed), via the navigation information screen, then the screen displaying only the total mileage and the trip mileage (bottom of screen).



Display of navigation information on instrument panel screen

You can display navigation information on the instrument panel screen by rotating the left-hand knob on the steering wheel.



Log of alerts

This function allows you to display the log of alerts.

☞ Press on button **A**.

The following messages appear consecutively on the instrument panel screen:

- Tyre pressure check.
- Maintenance indicator reminder.
- Display of message alerts.
- Oil level check.

Return to the main instrument panel screen display

Successive rotations of the left-hand control knob on the steering wheel allow you to return to the main instrument panel screen display (vehicle speed), via the navigation information screen, then the screen displaying only the total mileage and the trip mileage (bottom of screen).



Display of navigation information on instrument panel screen

You can display navigation information on the instrument panel screen by rotating the left-hand knob on the steering wheel.



Log of alerts

This function allows you to display the log of alerts.

☞ Press on button **A**.

The following messages appear consecutively on the instrument panel screen:

- Tyre pressure check.
- Maintenance indicator reminder.
- Display of message alerts.
- Oil level check.

1

Indicator and warning lights



Visual indicators informing the driver that a system is in operation (operation or deactivation indicator lights) or of the occurrence of a fault (warning light).

When the ignition is switched on

The warning lights come on for a few seconds when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

When the engine is started, these warning lights should switch off.

Operation indicator lights



1. Front fog lamps.



2. Left-hand direction indicator.



3. Side lights.



4. Main beam headlamps.



5. Dipped headlamps.



6. Right-hand direction indicator.



7. Rear fog lamps.



Diesel engine pre-heating

Wait until this is switched off before operating the starter.

Deactivation warning lights

If one of the following warning lights comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally.

Passenger's air bag system deactivation



The passenger's air bag system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

A specific control, located in the glove box, permits deactivation of the system. This is confirmed by continuous lighting of this warning light on the instrument panel or a message on the multifunction screen.



Front passenger's airbag activation

If this comes on temporarily when the ignition is switched on, it indicates that the front passenger's airbag is active.

Dynamic stability control (ESP/ASR) deactivation



The ESP/ASR system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

A specific button, located in the centre of the fascia, permits deactivation of the system. This is confirmed by continuous lighting of this warning light and of the indicator light on the button.

From approximately 30 mph (50 km/h), the system is reactivated automatically.

Warning lights



When the engine is running or the vehicle is moving, the lighting of one of the following warning lights indicates the occurrence of a fault requiring intervention on the part of the driver.

Any fault resulting in the displaying of a warning light must be the subject of further diagnostics by reading the associated message on the multifunction display.

Should you encounter any problems, do not hesitate to contact a CITROËN dealer.



Diesel engine pre-heating

Wait until this is switched off before operating the starter.

Deactivation warning lights

If one of the following warning lights comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally.

Passenger's air bag system deactivation



The passenger's air bag system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

A specific control, located in the glove box, permits deactivation of the system. This is confirmed by continuous lighting of this warning light on the instrument panel or a message on the multifunction screen.



Front passenger's airbag activation

If this comes on temporarily when the ignition is switched on, it indicates that the front passenger's airbag is active.

Dynamic stability control (ESP/ASR) deactivation



The ESP/ASR system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

A specific button, located in the centre of the fascia, permits deactivation of the system. This is confirmed by continuous lighting of this warning light and of the indicator light on the button.

From approximately 30 mph (50 km/h), the system is reactivated automatically.

Warning lights



When the engine is running or the vehicle is moving, the lighting of one of the following warning lights indicates the occurrence of a fault requiring intervention on the part of the driver.

Any fault resulting in the displaying of a warning light must be the subject of further diagnostics by reading the associated message on the multifunction display.

Should you encounter any problems, do not hesitate to contact a CITROËN dealer.



Diesel engine pre-heating

Wait until this is switched off before operating the starter.

Deactivation warning lights

If one of the following warning lights comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally.

Passenger's air bag system deactivation



The passenger's air bag system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

A specific control, located in the glove box, permits deactivation of the system. This is confirmed by continuous lighting of this warning light on the instrument panel or a message on the multifunction screen.



Front passenger's airbag activation

If this comes on temporarily when the ignition is switched on, it indicates that the front passenger's airbag is active.

Dynamic stability control (ESP/ASR) deactivation



The ESP/ASR system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

A specific button, located in the centre of the fascia, permits deactivation of the system. This is confirmed by continuous lighting of this warning light and of the indicator light on the button.

From approximately 30 mph (50 km/h), the system is reactivated automatically.

Warning lights



When the engine is running or the vehicle is moving, the lighting of one of the following warning lights indicates the occurrence of a fault requiring intervention on the part of the driver.

Any fault resulting in the displaying of a warning light must be the subject of further diagnostics by reading the associated message on the multifunction display.

Should you encounter any problems, do not hesitate to contact a CITROËN dealer.

Central alert



Lighting is associated with another warning light:

- punctured wheel,
- braking,
- coolant temperature,

stop the vehicle immediately and as safely as possible.

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

Service



If this warning light comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a problem in one of the systems which does not have a specific warning light.

In order to identify it, consult the message on the multifunction display.

The warning light only comes on temporarily in the case of the following minor faults:

- incorrect closing of the doors, boot, rear screen and bonnet,
- flat remote control battery,
- insufficient tyre pressure,
- the saturation of the particle emission filter (Diesel).

In the case of major faults, the warning light remains on until the operating fault is rectified, contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

Braking



If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in one of the braking systems:

- significant drop in the level in the circuit,
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) faulty (simultaneous lighting of the ABS warning light),

stop the vehicle immediately and as safely as possible.

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)



If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the anti-lock braking system.

However, this does not prevent operation of the vehicle's assisted braking.

Parking brake



When stationary, the permanent lighting of this warning lamp confirms that the parking brake is applied.

If this warning lamp flashes, it indicates a fault with its application or release. Consult a CITROËN dealer.

With the engine running, and when displayed at the same time as the **STOP** warning lamp, it indicates that the brake fluid level is too low.

If this warning lamp comes on, stop immediately and contact a CITROËN dealer.

Electronic parking brake fault



This warning lamp comes on if there is a fault with the electronic parking brake.

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

Electronic parking brake - deactivation of automatic functions



This warning lamp comes on if the "automatic locking" (upon switching off the ignition) and the "automatic unlocking" functions are deactivated or faulty.

Dynamic stability control (ESP/ASR)



The ESP/ASR system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

Unless the system has been deactivated, if this warning light comes on continuously, accompanied by a message on the instrument panel screen, switching on of the SERVICE warning light and an audible signal, this indicates the occurrence of a fault in the ESP/ASR system.

Engine autodiagnosics system



If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the engine management system.

If it flashes, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the emission control system.

Maximum coolant temperature



If this comes on, it indicates that the temperature in the cooling system is too high. Stop the vehicle immediately and as safely as possible.

Check the coolant level.

If the level is low, contact a CITROËN dealer.

Fuel low



If this comes on, it indicates that the range remaining is approximately 30 miles (50 km).

It may be less than this in certain driving conditions and depending on the engine.

The capacity of the tank is approximately 71 litres.

Battery charge



If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the battery charging circuit (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt...).

Seat belt not fastened/unfastened*



This warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel to remind the driver and all passengers that they must fasten their seat belt.

It is linked to the seat belt information given by the roof console.

Seat belt non-fastening/unfastening



This warning lamp informs you of the non-fastening and unfastening of the driver and passenger seat belts.

The lit up positions represent the passengers whose seat belts are not fastened/unfastened.

Driver's seat belt not fastened:

- The warning lamp lights up between 0 and 12 mph (20 km/h). Above 12 mph, it flashes accompanied by a sound signal for around 120 seconds.

Front and rear passenger seat belts not fastened:

- When the ignition is switched on, the points corresponding to the seat positions with seat belts not fastened remain lit up for 30 seconds.

Seat belts unfastened during the journey:

- The point corresponding to the seat position with seat belt unfastened lights up between 0 and 12 mph (20 km/h). Above 12 mph, it flashes accompanied by a sound signal for around 120 seconds. The sound signal stops when the seat belt is re-fastened or if a door is opened.

* According to country.

1

Maintenance indicator

System which informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

The point at which the service is due is calculated from the last indicator zero reset. It is determined by two parameters:

- the distance travelled,
- the time elapsed since the last service.

More than 620 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.

Example: 1 900 miles remain before the next service is due.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the display indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner is switched off**; the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. The display then indicates the total and trip distances.



Less than 620 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

Example: 500 miles remain before the next service is due.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the display indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on** to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.

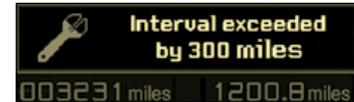


Service overdue

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.

Example: the service is overdue by 300 miles.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the display indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains lit.**



The distance remaining may be weighted by the time factor, depending on the driver's driving habits.

Therefore, the spanner may also come on if you have exceeded the two year service interval.

Maintenance indicator zero reset



After each service, the maintenance indicator must be reset to zero.

Your CITROËN technician resets the indicator to zero after each service. However, if you do your own servicing, the procedure for resetting to zero is as follows:

- ☞ switch off the ignition,
- ☞ press and hold the trip distance recorder zero reset button,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☞ when the display indicates "0", release the button; the spanner disappears.

Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the zero reset to be taken into account.

Engine oil level indicator

System which informs the driver of the validity or invalidity of the engine oil level.

This information is indicated for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the service information.

The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 15 minutes.

Oil level correct



Lack of oil



This is indicated by displaying of the message "Oil level incorrect".

If the lack of oil is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, it is essential that the level is topped up to prevent damage to the engine.

Oil level gauge fault



This is indicated by displaying of the message "Oil level measurement not valid". Consult a CITROËN dealer.

Maintenance indicator zero reset



After each service, the maintenance indicator must be reset to zero.

Your CITROËN technician resets the indicator to zero after each service. However, if you do your own servicing, the procedure for resetting to zero is as follows:

- ☞ switch off the ignition,
- ☞ press and hold the trip distance recorder zero reset button,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☞ when the display indicates "0", release the button; the spanner disappears.

Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the zero reset to be taken into account.

Engine oil level indicator

System which informs the driver of the validity or invalidity of the engine oil level.

This information is indicated for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the service information.

The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 15 minutes.

Oil level correct



Lack of oil



This is indicated by displaying of the message "Oil level incorrect".

If the lack of oil is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, it is essential that the level is topped up to prevent damage to the engine.

Oil level gauge fault



This is indicated by displaying of the message "Oil level measurement not valid". Consult a CITROËN dealer.

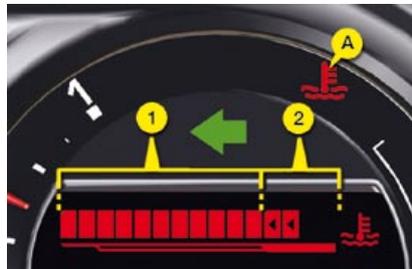
1

Engine oil temperature gauge



Under normal operating conditions, the bars should be within section 1. In severe operating conditions, the bars may extend into section 2. In this event, slow down, and if necessary, stop the engine and check the levels (see corresponding chapter).

Coolant temperature indicator



Under normal operating conditions, the bars should be within section 1. In severe operating conditions, the bars may extend into section 2, the engine coolant temperature warning lamp **A** and the **STOP** warning lamp will light up, **stop immediately**. Switch off the ignition. **The cooling fan may continue to operate for a certain time.**

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

If the **SERVICE** warning lamp lights up, check the levels (see corresponding chapter).

Fuel gauge indicator



On horizontal ground, the lighting of the fuel low warning lamp warns you that you are using the reserve tank. A message alert is displayed on the instrument panel.

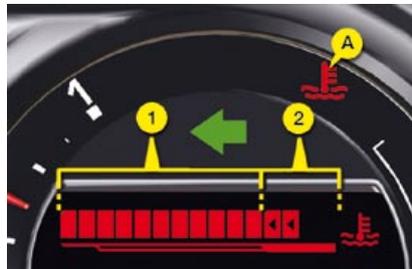
1

Engine oil temperature gauge



Under normal operating conditions, the bars should be within section 1. In severe operating conditions, the bars may extend into section 2. In this event, slow down, and if necessary, stop the engine and check the levels (see corresponding chapter).

Coolant temperature indicator



Under normal operating conditions, the bars should be within section 1. In severe operating conditions, the bars may extend into section 2, the engine coolant temperature warning lamp **A** and the **STOP** warning lamp will light up, **stop immediately**. Switch off the ignition. **The cooling fan may continue to operate for a certain time.**

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

If the **SERVICE** warning lamp lights up, check the levels (see corresponding chapter).

Fuel gauge indicator



On horizontal ground, the lighting of the fuel low warning lamp warns you that you are using the reserve tank. A message alert is displayed on the instrument panel.

Total distance recorder

System which measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle during its life.

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

Trip distance recorder

System which measures a distance travelled during a day or other period until it is reset to zero by the driver.



- With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

Lighting rheostat

System for manual adjustment of the brightness of the instruments and controls in relation to the exterior brightness.



Operation

- Press button **A** to decrease the brightness of the instruments and controls.
- Press button **B** to increase the brightness of the instruments and controls.

Deactivation

When the lights are off, or in day mode on vehicles fitted with daytime lights, pressing the buttons does not have any effect.

Total distance recorder

System which measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle during its life.

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

Trip distance recorder

System which measures a distance travelled during a day or other period until it is reset to zero by the driver.



- ☞ With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

Lighting rheostat

System for manual adjustment of the brightness of the instruments and controls in relation to the exterior brightness.



Operation

- ☞ Press button **A** to decrease the brightness of the instruments and controls.
- ☞ Press button **B** to increase the brightness of the instruments and controls.

Deactivation

When the lights are off, or in day mode on vehicles fitted with daytime lights, pressing the buttons does not have any effect.

Total distance recorder

System which measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle during its life.

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

Trip distance recorder

System which measures a distance travelled during a day or other period until it is reset to zero by the driver.



- ☞ With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

Lighting rheostat

System for manual adjustment of the brightness of the instruments and controls in relation to the exterior brightness.



Operation

- ☞ Press button **A** to decrease the brightness of the instruments and controls.
- ☞ Press button **B** to increase the brightness of the instruments and controls.

Deactivation

When the lights are off, or in day mode on vehicles fitted with daytime lights, pressing the buttons does not have any effect.

MULTIFUNCTION SCREEN C

Presentation



1. Time
2. Outside temperature
3. Date and display zone

When the outside temperature is between +3 °C and -3 °C, the temperature display flashes (ice risk).

The outside temperature displayed may be greater than the actual temperature, if the vehicle is parked in bright sunlight.

Controls



- A. Access to the "Main Menu"
 - B. Cancellation of the operation or return to the previous display
 - C. Scrolling in the screen menus
 - D. Validation at the steering wheel
- Validation at the steering wheel
- D. Validation on the audio equipment control panel

It is recommended that the driver should not manipulate the controls while the vehicle is in motion.

Main Menu

Press on the button **A** to view the "Main Menu" of the multifunction screen. This menu gives you access to the following functions:



Personalisation-Configuration

This permits activation/deactivation of the:

- brightness and contrast of the multifunction screen,
- date and time,
- units of the outside temperature displayed.



Radio-CD

(see "Audio" chapter)



Bluetooth® hands-free kit

(see "Audio" chapter)

Adjusting the brightness and contrast

- ☞ Press on **A**.
- ☞ Use **C** to select the "Brightness - video adjustment" menu. Confirm with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio equipment.
- ☞ Select the configuration of the screen using **C**. Confirm with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio equipment.
- ☞ Select the brightness setting. Confirm with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio equipment.
- ☞ Select the inverse or normal display mode using **C** then validate with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio equipment. To adjust the brightness select "+" or "-" and save your setting with a press on **C**.
- ☞ Validate with **"OK"** on the screen.

Adjusting the date and the time

- ☞ Press on **A**.
- ☞ Use **C** to select the "Adjusting the date and time" menu, then confirm your choice with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio equipment.
- ☞ Select the screen configuration using **C**. Confirm with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio equipment.
- ☞ Select the adjustment for the date and the time, using **B**. Confirm with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio equipment.
- ☞ Press **C** to select the values you wish to modify. Confirm your choice with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio equipment.
- ☞ Validate with **"OK"** on the screen.

Choosing the units

- ☞ Press on **A**.
- ☞ Use **C** to select the "Choice of temperature units" menu, then confirm your choice with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio equipment.
- ☞ Using **C**, select the unit then validate with a press on **C** on the steering wheel or **D** on the audio equipment.
- ☞ Validate with **"OK"** on the screen.

Selection of the type of information displayed (Mode)

Successive presses on the end of the wiper stalk or on the **MODE** button on the audio equipment permit selection of the type of information presented on the multifunction screen (date or radio, CD, MP3 CD, CD changer).

16/9 COLOUR DISPLAY (WITH MYWAY)



Displays on the screen

It displays the following information automatically and directly:

- the time,
- the date,
- the altitude,
- the exterior temperature (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- the audio functions,
- the satellite navigation system information.

* According to country.

Controls



From the MyWay control panel, to select one of the applications:

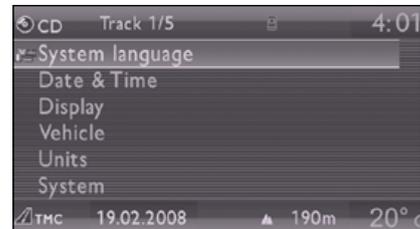
- ☞ press the dedicated **"RADIO"**, **"MUSIC"**, **"NAV"**, **"TRAFFIC"**, **"SETUP"** or **"PHONE"** button to gain access to the corresponding menu,
- ☞ turn the navigator to move the selection,
- ☞ press the navigator to confirm the selection,

or

- ☞ press the **"ESC"** button to abandon the current operation and return to the previous display.

For further details concerning these applications, refer to the "Audio Equipment" section or to the specific user guide given to you with the other owner's documents.

"SETUP" menu



- ☞ Press the **"SETUP"** button to gain access to the **"SETUP"** menu. This allows you to select from the following functions:
 - "Languages",
 - "Date and time",
 - "Display",
 - "Units",
 - "System parameters".

Languages

This menu allows you to select the language used by the display: Deutsch, English, Espanol, Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Polski, Portugues, Türkçe*.

Date and time

This menu allows you to set the date and time, the format of the date and the format of the time.

To set the date and time:

- ☞ Press the **"SETUP"** control.
- ☞ Turn the dial to select **"DATE AND TIME"**.
- ☞ Press the dial to confirm.
- ☞ Turn the dial to select **"SET DATE AND TIME"**.
- ☞ Press the dial to confirm.
- ☞ Turn the dial to select a field:
 - **C** for the day,
 - **D** for the month,
 - **E** for the year,
 - **F** for the time.

- ☞ Press the dial to confirm.
- ☞ Turn the dial or use the alphanumeric keypad to select the digits which form the date and time.
- ☞ Press the dial to confirm each field.
- ☞ Turn the dial to select **"DATE FORMAT"**.
- ☞ Choose the format required and press the dial to confirm.
- ☞ Turn the dial to select **"TIME FORMAT"**.
- ☞ Choose the format required and press the dial to confirm.

Refer to the MyWay User Guide.

Display

This menu allows you to set the brightness of the screen, the screen colour scheme and the colour of the map (day/night or auto mode).

Units

This menu allows you to select the units: temperature (°C or °F) and distance (km or miles).

System parameters

This menu allows you to restore the factory configuration, display the software version and activate the scrolling text.

For safety reasons, it is imperative that configuration of the multifunction displays by the driver is carried out when stationary.

16/9 HIGH DEFINITION COLOUR DISPLAY (WITH NAVIDRIVE 3D)



Displays on the screen

It displays the following information automatically and directly:

- the time,
- the date,
- the altitude,
- the exterior temperature (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- the audio functions,
- the telephone and address book information,
- the satellite navigation system information.

Controls



From the NaviDrive 3D control panel, to select one of the applications:

- ☞ press the dedicated **"RADIO"**, **"MEDIA"**, **"NAV"**, **"TRAFFIC"**, **"ADDR BOOK"** or **"SETUP"** button to gain access to the corresponding menu,
 - ☞ turn the navigator to move the selection,
 - ☞ press the navigator to confirm the selection,
- or
- ☞ press the **"ESC"** button to abandon the current operation and return to the previous display.

For further details concerning these applications, refer to the "Audio Equipment" section or to the specific user guide given to you with the other owner's documents.

"SETUP" menu



Press the **"SETUP"** button to gain access to the **"SETUP"** menu. This allows you to select from the following functions:

- "Languages and voice functions",
- "Date and time",
- "Display",
- "Units",
- "System parameters".

Languages and voice functions

This menu allows you to:

- select the language used by the display (Deutsch, English, Espanol, Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Polski, Portugues, Türkçe*),
- select the voice recognition parameters (activation/deactivation, advice on use, personal voice programming, etc.),
- set the volume of the voice synthesiser.

Date and time

This menu allows you to set the date and time, the format of the date and the format of the time (refer to the "Audio Equipment" section or to the specific user guide given to you with the other owner's documents).

Display

This menu allows you to set the brightness of the screen, the screen colour scheme and the colour of the map (day/night or auto mode).

System parameters

This menu allows you to restore the factory configuration, display the software version and activate the scrolling text.

For safety reasons, it is imperative that configuration of the multifunction displays by the driver is carried out when stationary.

* According to country.



VENTILATION

A. Sunshine sensor.

B. Air diffusion grille.

The air diffusion grille located in the centre of the dashboard provides optimum distribution of the air for the front seats.

This system eliminates unpleasant air currents while maintaining an optimum temperature in the passenger compartment.

To open the air diffusion grille, turn the dial upwards.

To close the air diffusion grille, turn the dial fully downwards.

In very hot weather, to obtain more satisfactory central and side ventilation, it is advisable to close the diffused air conditioning.

C. Cooled glove box.

D. Rear passenger vents.

VENTILATION, HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING RECOMMENDATIONS

Air conditioning

3

We recommend use of the automatic regulation of the air conditioning.

It permits automatic and optimised control of all of the following functions: air flow, temperature in the passenger compartment and air distribution, by means of various sensors (exterior temperature, sunshine). This eliminates any need for you to change your settings other than the value displayed.

☞ Please do not block the sunshine sensor **A**.

If you select the automatic mode (by pressing the "AUTO" control) and leave all of the vents open, optimum comfort will be maintained and humidity and condensation will be removed regardless of the exterior climatic conditions.

The temperature in the passenger compartment cannot be lower than the exterior temperature if the air conditioning is not on.

In order to be effective, the air conditioning must be used with the windows closed. If the vehicle has been parked in the sun for a long period and the interior temperature is very high, ventilate the passenger compartment with the windows open for a few minutes, then close the windows.

To keep the air conditioning system in good working order it is essential that it is operated at least once a month.

The air conditioning uses the engine power during its operation. As a result, the fuel consumption of the vehicle increases.

In certain cases of particularly arduous use (e.g. towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures), switching off the air conditioning permits the recovery of engine power and therefore increases the towing capacity.

Air inlet

Check that the exterior grille for the air inlet, at the bottom of the windscreen, is clean and free of dead leaves, snow, etc.

When washing the vehicle using a high pressure nozzle, avoid spraying at the air inlet.

Air circulation

Maximum comfort is obtained by means of a good distribution of air in the passenger compartment, both in the front and in the rear.

To obtain a uniform distribution of air, take care not to block the exterior air intake grille located at the base of the windscreen, the vents, the air outlets under the front seats and the air extractor located behind the flaps in the boot.

The front and rear vents are fitted with thumbwheels to adjust the air flow and direction. We recommend that you leave all of the vents open.

Dust filter/Odour filter (active carbon)

There is a filter for excluding odours and dust.

This filter has to be changed in accordance with the vehicle maintenance schedule (see: "Maintenance and Warranty Guide").

AUTOMATIC AIR CONDITIONING (MONO ZONE)



Mono zone: this is the overall regulation of the temperature, distribution and flow of air in the passenger compartment.

The symbols and messages associated with the automatic air conditioning controls appear on the multifunction display.

1. Automatic operation
2. Temperature adjustment
3. Air distribution adjustment
4. Activation/deactivation of the air conditioning
5. Air flow adjustment
6. Front demisting - de-icing
7. Rear demisting - de-icing
8. Air recirculation - intake of exterior air
9. Display

1. Automatic operation



This is the normal system operating mode. In accordance with the level of comfort chosen, pressing this control, confirmed by the switching on of indicator light **A**, permits automatic and simultaneous control of all of the following functions:

- Air flow.
- Temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Air distribution.
- Air intake.
- Air conditioning.

It is advisable to leave all of the vents open.

Simply pressing one of the controls, with the exception of control **2**, switches the system to manual mode.

Indicator light **A** switches off.

2. Temperature adjustment



Turn control **2** to change the temperature:

- Clockwise to increase the temperature.
- Anticlockwise to reduce the temperature.

The setting required is displayed.

The value indicated on the display corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit, depending on the choice of configuration validated on the display.

A setting around the **value 21** usually makes it possible to obtain optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is usual.

On entering the vehicle, the interior temperature may be much colder (or warmer) than is comfortable. There is no need to change the temperature displayed in order to obtain rapidly the level of comfort required.

The automatic regulation of the air conditioning will use its maximum performance settings to correct the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Control via the manual controls

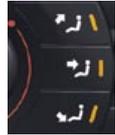
It is possible to adjust one or more functions manually, while leaving the other functions in automatic mode.

☞ Press one of the controls, with the exception of that which regulates the temperature **2**. Indicator light **A** switches off.

Switching to manual mode may result in discomfort (temperature, humidity, odour, condensation) and is not advantageous to comfort.

To return to automatic mode, press the **"AUTO"** control.

3. Air distribution adjustment



☞ Press the controls **3** to change the distribution of the air flow.

The indicator lights corresponding to the distribution chosen come on:

- Windscreen and front side windows.
- Front ventilation (central and side vents and air diffusion grille if open) and rear ventilation.
- Front and rear footwells.

Simultaneous displaying of the distribution of air to the windscreen and side windows and of front and rear ventilation is not possible.

4. Air conditioning

The air conditioning will only operate when the engine is running. The air blower control (air flow adjustment) must be active to obtain air conditioning.



☞ Press control **4**. Indicator light **B** comes on.

In order to be effective, the air conditioning must be used with the windows closed.

Deactivating the air conditioning may result in discomfort (temperature, humidity, odour, condensation).

5. Air flow adjustment



☞ Turn control **5** to the right to increase the air flow or to the left to reduce it.

The air flow level is indicated by the progressive lighting of the blocks of the bar graph on the control panel display **9**.

To prevent condensation and deterioration of the quality of the air in the passenger compartment, ensure that an adequate flow of air is maintained.

Switching off the ventilation



☞ Turn control **5** to the left until the flow of air stops.

The **"OFF"** symbol is displayed on the multifunction display.

This action switches off the display and the indicator lights.

It deactivates all of the system's functions, with the exception of the rear screen demisting.

The temperature-related comfort is no longer controlled (temperature, humidity, odour, condensation).

Avoid driving for too long with the air conditioning off.

To reactivate the air conditioning:

☞ Press control **1**.

6. Front demisting - de-icing



In certain cases, the **"AUTO"** mode may not be sufficient to demist or de-ice the windows (humidity, several passengers, ice).

☞ Press control **6** to clear the windows quickly. The indicator light comes on.

It controls the temperature, air flow and intake and distributes the ventilation to the windscreen and front side windows.

Resuming manual control exits from "Demisting" mode. It must be cancelled to permit renewal of the air in the passenger compartment and demisting.

Once the inconvenience has been eliminated, pressing control **1** returns the system to "AUTO" mode.

7. Rear demisting - de-icing

The heated rear screen operates independently of the air conditioning system.



☞ Press control **7**, with the engine running, to demist the rear screen and the mirrors. The indicator light comes on.

Demisting is switched off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current and in relation to the exterior temperature.

It may be stopped by pressing control **7** again or when the engine is switched off.

However, demisting resumes when the engine is switched on again.

Switch off the rear screen and exterior mirrors demisting when you consider this necessary as low current consumption reduces fuel consumption.

8. Intake of exterior air/ Recirculation of interior air

This function enables you to isolate the passenger compartment from exterior fumes and odours.



☞ Press control **8** several times to set the air intake mode, the indicator light comes on.

It must be cancelled as soon as possible to permit renewal of the air in the passenger compartment and demisting.

- When starting with the engine cold, the flow will reach its optimum level gradually to prevent an excessive distribution of cold air.
- When entering the vehicle after it has been parked for a fairly long period, if the interior temperature is very different from your comfort setting there is no need to change the temperature displayed in order to quickly reach the level of comfort required. The system automatically uses its maximum performance to correct the difference in temperature as quickly as possible.
- The water resulting from the air conditioning condensation is discharged via an opening provided for this purpose; therefore, a puddle of water may form underneath the vehicle when stationary.
- In all seasons, if the weather is cool, the air conditioning is useful as it removes the humidity from the air and the condensation. Avoid driving for prolonged periods with the air conditioning switched off.

AUTOMATIC AIR CONDITIONING (DUAL ZONE)

3



Dual zone: this is the differentiated regulation of the temperature and air distribution on the driver's side and the front passenger side.

The driver and his front passenger can each adjust the temperature and the distribution of the air to suit their requirements.

The symbols and messages associated with the automatic air conditioning controls appear on the multifunction display.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1a. Automatic operation on the driver's side</p> <p>1b. Automatic operation on the passenger's side</p> <p>2a. Temperature adjustment on the driver's side</p> <p>2b. Temperature adjustment on the passenger's side</p> <p>3a. Air distribution adjustment on the driver's side</p> <p>3b. Air distribution adjustment on the passenger's side</p> | <p>4a. Driver's zone display</p> <p>4b. Passenger's zone display</p> <p>5. Air flow adjustment</p> <p>6. Activation/deactivation of the air conditioning</p> <p>7. Air recirculation – intake of exterior air</p> <p>8. Rear demisting – de-icing</p> <p>9. Front demisting – de-icing</p> |
|--|---|

1a-1b. Automatic operation



This is the normal system operating mode. In accordance with the level of comfort chosen, pressing this control, confirmed by the displaying of indicator light **A**, permits automatic and simultaneous control of all of the following functions:

- Air flow.
- Temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Air distribution.
- Air conditioning.
- Automatic air recirculation.

It is advisable to leave all of the vents open. Simply pressing one of the controls, with the exception of that which regulates the temperature **1a** and **1b**, switches the system to manual mode. Indicator light **A** switches off.

2a-2b. Temperature adjustment



- ☞ Turn control **2a** to change the temperature on the driver's side and control **2b** to change the temperature on the passenger's side: to the right to increase the temperature or to the left to reduce it.

The setting required is displayed.

The value indicated on the display corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit, depending on the choice of configuration validated on the display.

A setting around the **value 21** usually makes it possible to obtain optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is usual.

On entering the vehicle, the interior temperature may be much colder (or warmer) than is comfortable. There is no need to change the temperature displayed in order to quickly obtain the level of comfort required.

The automatic regulation of the air conditioning will use its maximum performance settings to correct the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Control via the manual controls

- ☞ Press one of the controls, with the exception of those which regulate the temperature **2a** and **2b**. The indicator lights **A** on the "AUTO" controls switch off.

It is possible to adjust one or more functions manually while leaving the other functions in automatic mode.

Switching to manual mode may result in discomfort (temperature, humidity, odour, condensation) and is not advantageous to comfort.

To return to "AUTO" mode, press controls **1a** and **1b**. The indicator lights **A** come on.

3a-3b. Air distribution adjustment



- ☞ Press control **3a** to change the distribution of the air flow on the driver's side.

- ☞ Press control **3b** to change the distribution of the air flow on the passenger's side.

The indicator lights corresponding to the distribution chosen come on:

- Windscreen and front side windows.
- Front ventilation (central and side vents and air diffusion grille if open) and rear ventilation.
- Front and rear footwells.

Simultaneous displaying of the distribution of air to the windscreen and side windows and of front and rear ventilation is not possible.

5. Air flow adjustment



- ☞ Press the control:
- to increase the air flow,
 - to reduce the air flow.

The air flow level is indicated by the progressive lighting of the fan blade indicator lights.

Reducing the flow to minimum switches the air conditioning OFF.

To prevent condensation and deterioration of the quality of the air in the passenger compartment, ensure that an adequate flow of air is maintained.

6. Air conditioning



The air conditioning will only operate when the engine is running. The air blower control (air flow adjustment) must be active in order to obtain air conditioning.

- ☞ Press control **6**. The indicator light comes on.

In order to be effective, the air conditioning must be used with the windows closed.

7. Air recirculation - intake of exterior air



This function enables you to isolate the passenger compartment from exterior fumes and odours.

Intake of air in automatic anti-pollution mode

This is activated by default in automatic comfort regulation mode.

The automatic mode has an air quality sensor. It analyses the air and isolates the passenger compartment from the outside if it detects the presence of pollutants. In this case, it automatically activates the recirculation of the passenger compartment air.

This function does not detect unpleasant odours and therefore does not prevent them from entering the passenger compartment. It is not active when the exterior temperature is below +5 °C to avoid the risk of condensation forming inside the vehicle.



Closing the air intake

- ☞ Press control **7** to close the exterior air intake.



While retaining the other settings, this position allows the driver to isolate himself from unpleasant exterior odours and fumes at any time.

It must be cancelled as soon as possible to permit renewal of the air in the passenger compartment and demisting.

Intake of exterior air

- ☞ Press control **7** once to open the exterior air intake.



8. Rear demisting - de-icing



The heated rear screen operates independently of the air conditioning system.

- ☞ Press control **8**, with the engine running, to demist the rear screen and the mirrors. The indicator light comes on.

Demisting is switched off automatically to avoid an excessive consumption of current and in relation to the exterior temperature.

It may be stopped by pressing control **8** again or when the engine is switched off.

In this latter case, the demisting resumes if the engine is switched on again within one minute.

Switch off the rear screen and exterior mirrors demisting when you consider this necessary as low current consumption reduces fuel consumption.

9. Front demisting - de-icing



In certain cases, the "AUTO" mode may not be sufficient to demist or de-ice the windows (humidity, several passengers, ice).

- ☞ Press control **9** to clear the windows quickly. The indicator light comes on.

This system controls the temperature, air flow and intake and distributes the ventilation to the windshield and front side windows.

Resuming manual control exits from the "Demisting" mode. It must be cancelled as soon as possible to permit renewal of the air in the passenger compartment and demisting. Pressing one of the controls **1a** and **1b** returns the system to the "AUTO" mode.

When starting with the engine cold, the flow will reach its optimum level gradually to prevent an excessive distribution of cold air.

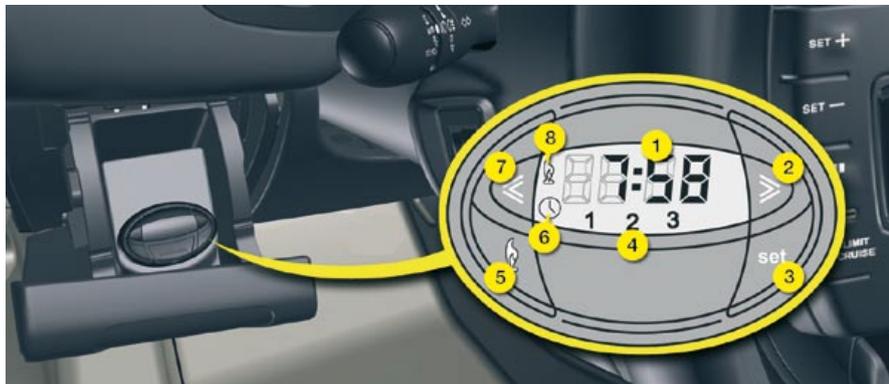
When entering the vehicle after it has been parked for a fairly long period, if the interior temperature is very different from your comfort setting there is no need to change the temperature displayed in order to quickly reach the level of comfort required. The system automatically uses its maximum performance to correct the difference in temperature as quickly as possible.

The water resulting from the air conditioning condensation is discharged via an opening provided for this purpose; therefore, a puddle of water may form underneath the vehicle when stationary.

In all seasons, if the weather is cool, the air conditioning is useful as it removes the humidity from the air and the condensation. Avoid driving for prolonged periods with the air conditioning switched off.

PROGRAMMABLE HEATING*

3



With the engine off, programmable heating preheats the coolant circuit in order to optimise the engine operating temperature prior to starting. The programmable heating system can be started immediately or delayed thanks to its programming function.

With the engine idle or the vehicle stationary, it is normal to hear a high-pitched whistling noise and to notice some smoke/emissions.

* According to country.

Digital programmer

The heating system's programmer is located on the left-hand side of the dashboard.

1. Time or remaining functioning time.
2. Increase (time).
3. Select programme.
4. Programme number selected.
5. Immediate start-up of heating.
6. Time adjustment and reading warning lamp.
7. Reduce (time).
8. Heating mode warning lamp.



9. Programmable heating system warning lamp.

- LED lit: Activated.
- LED off: Deactivated.



Setting the time

- ☞ Hold button **3** down and press button **2** or button **7**. Release button **3**, the time is displayed and symbol **6** flashes.
- ☞ Use the two adjustment buttons **2** (to go forward) or **7** (to go back) until the correct time is displayed.

Holding these buttons down will make the numbers displayed scroll more quickly.

Adjusting the operating duration



- ☞ Press button **3** and hold it down, press button **2** or **7** at the same time. Release button **3**. The time and symbol **6** flash.
- ☞ Press again on button **3** and hold it down, press button **2** or **7** at the same time. Release button **3**.
- ☞ The programmed operating duration is displayed and symbol **8** flashes.
- ☞ Adjust the operating duration with button **2** or **7**.
- ☞ To memorise the setting, press button **3** or wait until the display goes off.

Adjusting the remaining operating duration

When the heating mode is active, the remaining operation duration can be modified by between 10 and 30 minutes using buttons **2** or **7**.

Immediate start-up

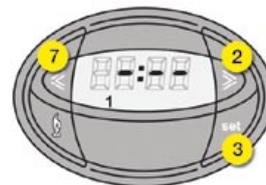


- ☞ Press button **5**.
- The screen displays the symbol **8** and the remaining operating duration. This can be adjusted. The maximum duration is 30 minutes.
- The warning lamp **8** lights up and remains lit for the whole duration of the system's operation. The duration of the system's operation disappears after 10 seconds.

Programming the start-up time



Start-up of the heating system can be programmed between 1 minute and 24 hours in advance.



3

You can store up to three different start-up times, but programme only one delayed start-up time.

Factory settings **A**:

- Start time **1**: 06.00.
- Start time **2**: 16.00.
- Start time **3**: 22.00.

The factory settings are replaced once you adjust them. The programmed times are stored until they are reprogrammed.

- ☞ Press button **3** several times until the programmed start-up time is displayed, then buttons **2** or **7**, in the next 10 seconds until the desired start-up time is displayed.

Before programming the delayed start-up of the heating, you must ensure that the clock is set to the correct time.

Selection and activation of the programmed heating start-up time

3



- Press button **3** several times until the programme number corresponding to the required programme time is displayed. The chosen pre-selected time is activated automatically after 10 seconds if no other buttons have been pressed.

To confirm that the mode is activated, symbols **4** and **8** flash until the heating starts up.

When the heating starts up, the warning lamp **9** lights up on the dashboard and the programmer screen.

Cancelling the current programme

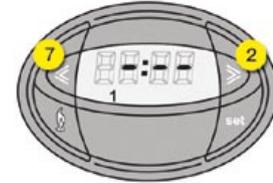


- Press button **3** briefly: the display of the start-up time goes off. In the event of a battery failure, the factory settings are restored.

Stopping the heating system while operating

- Press button **5**. The warning lamp **8** and the screen go out.

Reading the time



When a programme is operating, pressing button **2** or **7** displays the heating start-up time. A second press on these buttons displays the time.

When a programme is not operating, pressing button **2** or **7** displays the time.

When the heating is operating, the remaining operating duration is displayed instead of the time.

- The pre-selected start-up time can be modified or cancelled by following the instructions previously given above.
- In the event of a battery disconnection, the programmer must be reset (hours, minutes etc.)
- As a secondary advantage, use of your programmable heating system allows it to be used to pre-heat the passenger compartment.

Precautions in use:

The alarm volumetric movement sensor may be disturbed by the airflow from the programmable heating while in operation.

To avoid a false alarm while using the programmable heating, it is recommended to deactivate the volumetric protection.



Always switch off the programmable heating while refuelling in order to avoid the risk of fire or explosion.

To avoid any risk of intoxication or asphyxiation, the additional heating must not be used, even for short periods, in an enclosed area such as a garage or workshop not equipped with a system for the extraction of exhaust gases.

Do not park the vehicle over inflammable materials (e.g. dry grass, dead leaves or paper) as this could present a fire risk.

The programmable heating system is supplied by the vehicle's fuel tank. Before use, ensure that the remaining fuel level is sufficient. If you are using the reserve fuel tank, we strongly advise you not to use the programmable heating system.

FRONT SEATS

Seat consisting of a seat cushion, seat back and head restraint which can all be adjusted for optimum driving comfort.

3



For your safety, do not drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

MANUAL ADJUSTMENTS

1. Adjustments to the height and angle of the head restraint

To raise it, pull upwards.

To lower it, press on the control **A** to unlock it, and simultaneously on the head restraint itself. The adjustment is correct when the top edge of the head restraint is at the same height as the top of the head. It is also adjustable.

To raise it, press control **A** to unlock it, then pull it upwards. It may be necessary to adjust the backrest angle.

2. Adjustment of the backrest angle

Operate the control and adjust the position of the backrest to the front or to the rear.

3. Adjustment of the seat height

Raise or lower the control the number of times required to obtain the desired position.

4. Longitudinal adjustment of seat

Lift the control bar and adjust to the desired position.

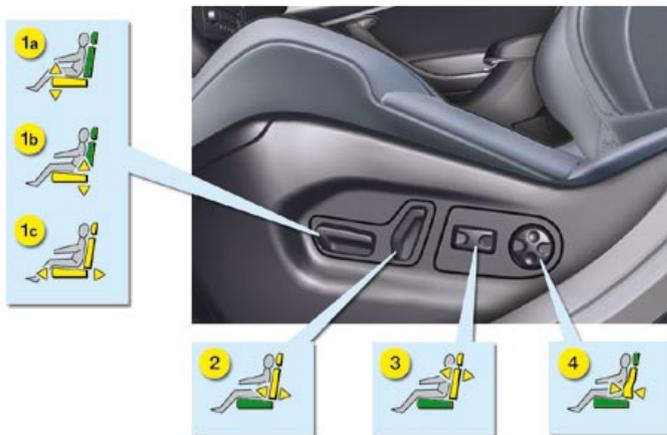
5. Adjustment of lumbar support

Turn the control and adjust to the desired position.

6. Heated seat controls

The heated seats only operate when the engine is running.

FRONT SEATS



ELECTRICAL ADJUSTMENTS

To adjust the electrical seats, switch on the ignition or start the engine if the vehicle has gone into economy mode.

Seat adjustments are also possible for a short period after opening one of the front doors or switching off the ignition.

1. Adjustment of the seat height and angle, and longitudinal adjustment

- ☞ Raise or lower the front of the control to adjust the seat cushion angle.
- ☞ Raise or lower the rear of the control to raise or lower the seat.
- ☞ Simultaneously raise or lower the front and rear of the control in order to raise or lower the entire seat.

2. Adjustment of the backrest angle

Move the control forwards or backwards to adjust the backrest angle.

3. Adjustment of the angle of the top of the backrest

Move the control forwards or backwards to adjust the angle of the top of the backrest.

4. Adjustment of lumbar support

This function allows you to independently adjust the height and level of lumbar support.

Move the control:

- ☞ Forwards or backwards to increase or reduce the lumbar support.
- ☞ Upwards or downwards to raise or lower the lumbar support zone.

3

Heated seats control

With the engine running, the front seats can operate separately.

- ☞ Use the corresponding adjustment dial, placed on the outer side of each front seat, to switch on and select the level of heating required:



- 0: Off.
- 1: Low.
- 2: Medium.
- 3: High.

Head restraint height and angle adjustments on electric seats

3



- ☞ To adjust the angle of the head restraint, push back or pull forward section **C** of the head restraint until you reach the desired position.
- ☞ To raise it, pull upwards.
- ☞ To lower it, press on the control **D** to unlock it, and simultaneously on the head restraint itself.
- ☞ To remove it, press on the control **D** to unlock it, then pull it upwards.

Massage function



This function provides the driver with a back massage. It only operates when the engine is running.

- ☞ Press on button **A**.

The warning lamp comes on and the massage function is activated for a period of 1 hour. During this time, massage is performed in cycles of 6 minutes (4 minutes of massage followed by 2 minutes break). In total, the system will perform 10 cycles.

After 1 hour, the function is deactivated. The warning lamp goes out.

Deactivation

You can deactivate the massage function at any time by pressing on button **A**.

The Welcome function

The welcome function assists entry and leaving the vehicle.

After switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door, the seat moves back automatically and then stays in this position, ready for the next entry to the vehicle.

When switching on the ignition, the seat moves forward to the memorised driving position.

When moving the seat, take care that no person or object hinders the automatic movement of the seat.

This function is deactivated by default. You may activate or deactivate this function using the "Main Menu" on the instrument panel screen. To do so, select "Vehicle parameters/Comfort/Driver welcome".

Storing driving positions



System which takes into account the settings of the driver's seat, exterior mirrors and air conditioning. It enables you to store up to two positions using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat.

Storing a position

Using buttons M/1/2

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Adjust your seat and your exterior mirrors.
- ☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.
An audible signal is heard indicating that the storing has been taken into account.

Storing a new position cancels the previous position.

For your safety, avoid storing a driving position while driving.

Recalling a stored position

Ignition on or engine running

- ☞ Briefly press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

An audible signal is heard indicating the end of the adjustment.

When the ignition is on, after a few consecutive position recalls, the function will be deactivated until the engine is started, to prevent discharging of the battery.

REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS



3

The rear head restraints can be removed and have two positions;

- high, position for use,
- low, storage position.

To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.

To lower it, press the lug then the head restraint.

To remove it, place it in the high position, push the lug and pull it upwards.

To refit it, engage the head restraint rods in the holes taking care to remain in the centreline of the seat back.

Never drive with the head restraints removed, they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

Storing driving positions



System which takes into account the settings of the driver's seat, exterior mirrors and air conditioning. It enables you to store up to two positions using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat.

Storing a position

Using buttons M/1/2

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Adjust your seat and your exterior mirrors.
- ☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds. An audible signal is heard indicating that the storing has been taken into account.

Storing a new position cancels the previous position.

For your safety, avoid storing a driving position while driving.

Recalling a stored position

Ignition on or engine running

- ☞ Briefly press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

An audible signal is heard indicating the end of the adjustment.

When the ignition is on, after a few consecutive position recalls, the function will be deactivated until the engine is started, to prevent discharging of the battery.

REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS



3

The rear head restraints can be removed and have two positions;

- high, position for use,
- low, storage position.

To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.

To lower it, press the lug then the head restraint.

To remove it, place it in the high position, push the lug and pull it upwards.

To refit it, engage the head restraint rods in the holes taking care to remain in the centreline of the seat back.

Never drive with the head restraints removed, they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

REAR SEATS



Bench seat, the left-hand (2/3) or right-hand (1/3) section of which can be folded to adapt the boot load space.

Removing the seat cushion

- ☞ Move the corresponding front seat forwards if necessary.
- ☞ Raise the front of the seat cushion 1.
- ☞ Tilt the seat cushion 1 fully against the front seat.
- ☞ Remove the seat cushion 1 from its fixings by pulling upwards.

Refitting the seat cushion

- ☞ Position the seat cushion 1 vertically in its fixings.
- ☞ Fold down the seat cushion 1.
- ☞ Press on the seat cushion to secure it.

Folding the seat

In order to fold a rear seat without any risk of damage, always start with the seat cushion, **never with the seat back**:

- ☞ move the corresponding front seat forwards if necessary,
- ☞ raise the front of the seat cushion 1,
- ☞ tilt the seat cushion 1 fully against the front seat,
- ☞ check that the seat belt is positioned correctly on the side of the seat back,
- ☞ lower or remove the head restraints if necessary,
- ☞ pull the control 3 forwards to release the seat back 2,
- ☞ tilt the seat back 2.

The seat cushion 1 can be removed to increase the loading volume.

Returning the seat back to its original position

When returning the rear seat back to its original position:

- ☞ put the seat back 2 in the upright position and secure it,
- ☞ fold the seat cushion 1,
- ☞ refit the head restraints or put them back in place.

When returning the rear seat back to its original position, take care not to trap the seat belts and ensure that their buckles are positioned correctly.



The red indicator on the control 3 should no longer be visible; if it is, push the seat fully back.

MIRRORS



Exterior mirrors

Each fitted with an adjustable mirror permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded.

Adjustment

With the ignition on:

- ☞ move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror,
- ☞ move control **B** in all four directions to adjust,
- ☞ return control **A** to the central position.

The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

The de-icing/demisting of the exterior mirrors is associated with that of the rear screen.

Folding

- ☞ from outside; lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ from inside; with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Control **A** must be pulled again.

Unfolding

- ☞ from outside; unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ from inside; with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

If the position is changed manually, a long press on control **A** re-engages the mirror.

The folding and unfolding of the exterior mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer.

Automatic tilting in reverse gear

System which provides a view of the ground during parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.

Programming

- ☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
- ☞ Select and adjust the left-hand and right-hand mirrors in succession.

The adjustment is stored immediately.

Switching on

- ☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.

The glass of the mirror selected tilts downwards, in accordance with its programming.

Switching off

- ☞ Exit reverse gear and wait twenty seconds.

or

- ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.

The mirror glass returns to its initial position.

The mirror glass also returns to its initial position:

- if the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),
- if the engine is switched off.

Interior mirror



3

Adjustable mirror providing a central rearward view.

Manual model

The mirror is fitted with a night-time anti-dazzle device.

Adjustment

- ☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day/night position

- ☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- ☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

As a safety precaution, the mirrors must be adjusted to reduce the "blind spot".

Electrochromatic exterior/interior mirrors



System which automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses.

In order to prevent dazzle, the glass of the interior and exterior mirrors darkens automatically in relation to the intensity of the light from the rear.

It lightens when the light (light beam of following vehicles, sun...) decreases, so guaranteeing optimum visibility.

Switching on

- ☞ Switch on the ignition and press switch 1.

The indicator light 2 comes on and the mirror operates automatically.

Switching off

- ☞ Press switch 1.

The indicator light 2 switches off and the mirror remains in its lightest state.

In order to guarantee optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the glass of the interior and exterior mirrors lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENT

The height and depth of the steering wheel can be adjusted to adapt the driving position to the size of the driver.



Adjustment

- ☞ First, adjust the driver's seat to the most suitable position.
- ☞ **When stationary**, pull the control **A** to unlock the steering wheel.
- ☞ Adjust the height and depth.
- ☞ Push the control to lock the steering wheel.

After locking, if you press firmly on the steering wheel, a slight click may be heard.

As a safety precaution, it is imperative that these operations are carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

REMOTE CONTROL KEY

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the lock or from a distance. It is also used to locate and start the vehicle and provide guide-me-home lighting, as well as providing protection against theft.

Complete unlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.

Each unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds and by switching on of the courtesy light.

According to version, the exterior mirrors unfold at the same time as the first unlocking action.

The complete or selective unlocking parameter is set via the instrument panel display configuration menu (see "Instruments and controls" section).

Complete unlocking is activated by default.

Selective unlocking is not possible using the key.

Electric boot opening



☞ Press button **B** to open the boot.

Complete unlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the left in the driver's door lock to unlock the vehicle.

Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds and lighting of the courtesy light (if the function is activated).

According to version, the exterior mirrors unfold at the same time.

Selective unlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock once to unlock the driver's door only.

☞ Press the open padlock again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

4

Unlocking the vehicle



Unfolding the key

☞ First press button **A** to unfold the key.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking using the remote control



- ☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely.

- ☞ Press the closed padlock for more than two seconds to close the windows and sunroof automatically in addition to locking.

Normal locking using the key

- ☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely.

Locking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds and by switching off of the courtesy light.

According to version, the exterior mirrors fold at the same time.

If one of the doors, the rear screen or the boot is still open, the central locking does not take place.

When the vehicle is locked, if it is unlocked inadvertently, it will relock automatically after thirty seconds unless a door is opened.

When stationary with the engine off, locking is confirmed by flashing of the interior locking control indicator light.

The folding and unfolding of the exterior mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer.

Deadlocking using the remote control



- ☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely or press the closed padlock for more than two seconds to close the windows and sunroof automatically in addition to locking.
- ☞ Press the closed padlock again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking using the key

- ☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely and hold it in this position for more than two seconds to close the windows automatically in addition to locking.
- ☞ Turn the key to the right again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the exterior mirrors fold at the same time.

Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.

It also deactivates the manual central control button.

When stationary with the engine off, locking is confirmed by flashing of the indicator lamp on the interior locking control.

If one of the doors or the boot is open or has not been closed correctly, the central locking will not work.

Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

Folding the key



4

- First press button **A** to fold the key.

Locating your vehicle

- Press the closed padlock to locate your locked vehicle in a car park.

This is indicated by switching on of the interior lighting and flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

The vehicle remains locked.

Guide-me-home lighting



A press on button **B** operates the guide-me-home lighting (lighting of the sidelamps, dipped beams and number plate lamps).

A second press before the end of the timing cancels the guide-me-home lighting.

The timed duration can be set via the "Lighting" menu on the "Main Menu" of the instrument panel screen.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

SERVICE

In the event of a malfunction, you are informed by lighting of this warning light, an audible signal and a message on the multifunction display.

In this case, your vehicle does not start; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

IGNITION SWITCH



1. "S": Steering lock

To unlock the steering, gently move the steering wheel while turning the key, without forcing it.

2. "M": Drive position

Depending on the version of your vehicle, the orange and red warning lamps should also come on for a short time.

3. "D": Starter

Release the key as soon the engine has started.

If the first attempt fails, switch off the ignition. Wait ten seconds then operate the starter again.

Steering lock

1. "S": After removing the key, turn the steering wheel to lock the steering. The key can only be removed in position S.
2. "M": Ignition switched on, the steering is unlocked (by turning the key to position M, move the steering wheel gently if necessary).
3. "D": Starter position.

Never turn the key to this position when the engine is running.

Key in ignition buzzer

If you forget to remove the key from the ignition, a buzzer sounds when the driver's door is opened.

Do not run the engine in an enclosed space or where there is insufficient ventilation.

It is essential always to drive with the engine running in order to retain braking and steering assistance.

Never remove the ignition key before the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

Avoid attaching a heavy object to the key which would weigh down on its shaft in the switch and could cause a malfunction.

STOPPING

Vehicles equipped with a turbocharger

Never stop the engine without having allowed it to run for a few seconds at idle, this being the time required for the turbocharger to return to a normal speed.

Do not flick the accelerator at the moment of switching off the ignition. This could cause serious damage to the turbocharger(s).

Malfunction

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

☞ First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.

☞ Then, reinitialise the remote control.

If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

Changing the battery



Battery ref.: CR0523/3 volts.

This replacement battery is available from CITROËN dealers.

SERVICE If the battery is flat, you are informed by lighting of this warning light, an audible signal and a message on the multifunction display.

- ☞ Unclip the casing using a coin at the notch.
- ☞ Slide the flat battery out of its location.
- ☞ Slide the new battery into its location observing the original direction.
- ☞ Clip the casing.
- ☞ Reinitialise the remote control.

Reinitialisation

☞ Switch off the ignition.

☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition)**.

☞ Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds, until the operation requested is triggered.

☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.

Lost keys

Visit a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's V5 registration certificate and your personal identification documents.

The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a replacement key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle.

You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reprogrammed.

The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off, except for reprogramming.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system, this could cause malfunctions.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

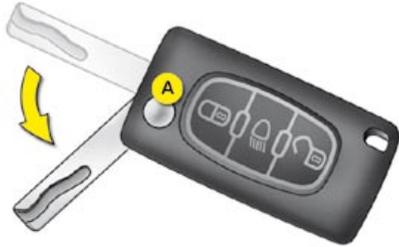
Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment.

Take them to an approved collection point.

Folding the key



4

- First press button **A** to fold the key.

Locating your vehicle

- Press the closed padlock to locate your locked vehicle in a car park.

This is indicated by switching on of the interior lighting and flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

The vehicle remains locked.

Guide-me-home lighting



A press on button **B** operates the guide-me-home lighting (lighting of the sidelamps, dipped beams and number plate lamps).

A second press before the end of the timing cancels the guide-me-home lighting.

The timed duration can be set via the "Lighting" menu on the "Main Menu" of the instrument panel screen.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

SERVICE

In the event of a malfunction, you are informed by lighting of this warning light, an audible signal and a message on the multifunction display.

In this case, your vehicle does not start; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

Lost keys

Visit a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's V5 registration certificate and your personal identification documents.

The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a replacement key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle.

You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reprogrammed.

The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off, except for reprogramming.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system, this could cause malfunctions.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment.

Take them to an approved collection point.

IGNITION SWITCH



1. "S": Steering lock

To unlock the steering, gently move the steering wheel while turning the key, without forcing it.

2. "M": Drive position

Depending on the version of your vehicle, the orange and red warning lamps should also come on for a short time.

3. "D": Starter

Release the key as soon the engine has started.

If the first attempt fails, switch off the ignition. Wait ten seconds then operate the starter again.

Steering lock

1. "S": After removing the key, turn the steering wheel to lock the steering. The key can only be removed in position S.
2. "M": Ignition switched on, the steering is unlocked (by turning the key to position M, move the steering wheel gently if necessary).
3. "D": Starter position.
Never turn the key to this position when the engine is running.

Key in ignition buzzer

If you forget to remove the key from the ignition, a buzzer sounds when the driver's door is opened.

Do not run the engine in an enclosed space or where there is insufficient ventilation.

It is essential always to drive with the engine running in order to retain braking and steering assistance.

Never remove the ignition key before the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

Avoid attaching a heavy object to the key which would weigh down on its shaft in the switch and could cause a malfunction.

STOPPING

Vehicles equipped with a turbocharger

Never stop the engine without having allowed it to run for a few seconds at idle, this being the time required for the turbocharger to return to a normal speed.

Do not flick the accelerator at the moment of switching off the ignition. This could cause serious damage to the turbocharger(s).

ALARM

System which protects and provides a deterrent against the theft of your vehicle. It provides two types of protection, exterior and interior, as well as an anti-tamper function.

Exterior protection

4

The system monitors any opening of the vehicle.

The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to enter the vehicle by forcing a door, the boot or the bonnet.

Interior protection

The system monitors any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.

The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window or moves inside the vehicle.

If you wish to leave a pet in the vehicle or a window partially open, deactivate the interior protection.

Anti-tamper function

The system monitors any putting out of service of its components.

The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to put the wires of the siren, the central control or the battery out of service.

Do not make any modifications to the alarm system, this could cause malfunctions.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm



Activation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the locking button on the remote control.

The alarm is activated; the indicator light on button **A** flashes once per second.

Deactivation

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the unlocking button on the remote control.

The alarm is deactivated; the indicator light on button **A** switches off.

Locking the vehicle with exterior protection alarm only

Deactivation of the interior protection

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Within ten seconds, press button **A** until the indicator light is lit continuously.
- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the locking button on the remote control.

The exterior protection alarm alone remains activated; the indicator light on button **A** flashes once per second.

In order to be taken into account, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivation of the interior protection

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the unlocking button on the remote control.
- ☞ Relock the vehicle using the remote control.

The alarm is activated again with both types of protection; the indicator light on button **A** switches off.

Triggering

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for approximately thirty seconds.

After it has been triggered, the alarm is again operational.

If the alarm is triggered ten times in succession, the eleventh time will result in it becoming inactive.

If the indicator light on button **A** flashes rapidly, this indicates that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

To avoid triggering the alarm when washing your vehicle, lock it using the key.

Do not activate the alarm before disconnecting the battery, otherwise the siren will sound.

Failure of the remote control

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.
- ☞ Open the door; the alarm is triggered.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition; the alarm stops.

Locking the vehicle without alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, lighting of the indicator light on button **A** for ten seconds indicates a siren fault.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer.

Automatic operation*

Depending on the legislation in force in your country, one of these cases may occur:

- 45 seconds after the vehicle is locked using the remote control, the alarm is activated, regardless of the status of the doors and boot.
- 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed, the alarm is activated.
 - ☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control.

* According to country.

ELECTRIC WINDOWS

System used to open or close a window manually or automatically. Fitted with a safety auto-reverse system and a system for deactivation in the event of misuse of the rear controls.

One-touch electric windows

There are two options:

- **manual mode**
 - ☞ Press or pull the control gently. The window stops when the control is released.

- **automatic mode**
 - ☞ Press or pull the control firmly. The window opens or closes fully when the control is released.
 - ☞ Pressing the control again stops the movement of the window.

Safety auto-reverse

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers again.

If the window cannot be closed (for example, in the presence of ice), immediately after the movement is reversed:

- ☞ press and hold the control until the window opens fully,
- ☞ then pull the control immediately and hold it until the window closes,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed.

The safety auto-reverse function is not operational during these operations.

The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off or until the vehicle is locked after a door is opened.

If one of the passenger windows cannot be operated from the driver's door control pad, carry out the operation from the control pad of the passenger door concerned, and vice versa.

4



1. Driver's electric window control.
2. Passenger's electric window control.
3. Rear right electric window control.
4. Rear left electric window control.
5. Deactivation of the rear electric window and door controls.

Reinitialisation

If a window does not rise automatically, its operation must be reinitialised:

- ☞ pull the control until the window stops,
- ☞ release the control and pull it again until the window closes fully,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed,
- ☞ press the control to lower the window automatically to the low position,
- ☞ when the window has reached the low position, press the control again for approximately one second.

The safety auto-reverse function is not operational during these operations.

Deactivation of the rear electric window and door controls



- ☞ For the safety of your children, press control **5** to deactivate the rear electric window controls regardless of their position.

Indicator light on, the rear controls are deactivated.

Indicator light off, the rear controls are activated.

A message on the instrument panel display informs you of the activation/deactivation of the control.

This control also deactivates the interior controls for the rear doors (refer to the section "Child safety - § Electric child lock").

Any other status of the indicator light indicates a malfunction of the electric child lock. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

If an obstacle is encountered during operation of the electric windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the control concerned.

When the driver operates the controls for the passengers' electric windows, he must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the windows.

The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Be aware of children when operating the windows.

DOORS

Opening

From outside



- ☞ After unlocking the vehicle completely using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.

When the selective unlocking is activated, the first press of the remote control unlocking button permits unlocking of the driver's door only.

From inside



- ☞ Pull the front door control to open the door; this unlocks this vehicle completely.
- ☞ Pull the rear door control to open the door; this unlocks the door concerned only.

With the selective unlocking activated:

- the driver's door control unlocks the driver's door only.
- the other door controls unlock the other doors and the boot.

The interior door controls do not operate when the vehicle is dead-locked.

Manual centralised control

System which provides full manual locking or unlocking of the doors and boot from the inside.



Locking

- ☞ Press button **A** to lock the vehicle. The red indicator light on the button comes on. It flashes when the doors are locked while stationary with the engine off.

If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not take place.

Unlocking

- ☞ Press button **A** again to unlock the vehicle.

The red indicator light on the button switches off.

If the vehicle is locked or dead-locked from the outside, the red indicator light flashes and button **A** is inactive.

- ☞ In this case, use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic centralised control

System which provides full automatic locking or unlocking of the doors and the boot while driving.

You can activate or deactivate this function.



Locking

When the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the doors and the boot lock automatically.

If one of the doors is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.

If the boot is open, the automatic central locking of the doors is active.

Unlocking

- ☞ Above 6 mph (10 km/h), press button **A** to unlock the doors and the boot temporarily.

Activation

- ☞ Press button **A** for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message appears on the instrument panel display, accompanied by an audible signal.

Deactivation

- ☞ Press button **A** again for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message appears on the instrument panel display, accompanied by an audible signal.

Emergency control

System which locks or unlocks the doors mechanically in the event of a malfunction of the battery or of the central locking.

Locking the driver's door

- ☞ Insert the key in the lock, then turn it to the right.

Unlocking the driver's door

- ☞ Insert the key in the lock, then turn it to the left.

Locking the front and rear passenger doors



- ☞ Insert the key in the lock, located on the edge of the door, then turn it **one eighth of a turn**.

Unlocking the front and rear passenger doors

- ☞ Pull the interior door opening control.

BOOT (SALOON)**Opening**

4

- ☞ Press upwards on lever **1** and lift up the boot.

Locking/unlocking

With the vehicle stationary, this is carried out using:

- The remote control.
- The key in a door lock.
- The interior central locking/unlocking control.

The boot automatically locks when the vehicle is moving at a speed of over 6 mph (10 km/h), even if automatic central locking is deactivated. It is unlocked when a door is opened or when the central locking button is pressed (speed lower than 6 mph (10 km/h)).

Tailgate release

System for mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a battery or central locking malfunction.

**Unlocking**

- ☞ Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- ☞ Push the white part, located inside the lock, to the left to unlock the boot.

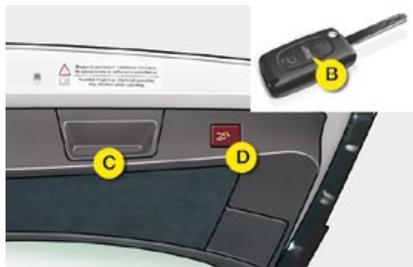
BOOT (TOURER)

Manual opening



- ☞ Press upwards on lever **A** and lift up the tailgate.

Electric opening



- ☞ Press upwards on lever **A**, or press button **B** of the remote control.

Do not attempt to help the opening of the tailgate manually after pressing the control **A**.

Manual closing

- ☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior handle **C**.

Electric closing

- ☞ Press the push-button **D** to close the tailgate.

Do not interrupt the closing of the boot; if any obstacle prevents it closing, the operation will stop and the tailgate will automatically rise by a few centimetres.

Locking/unlocking

With the vehicle stationary, this is carried out using:

- The remote control.
- The key in a door lock.
- The interior central locking/unlocking control.

The boot automatically locks when the vehicle is moving at a speed of over 6 mph (10 km/h), even if automatic central locking is deactivated. It is unlocked when a door is opened or when the central locking button is pressed (at a speed of less than 6 mph (10 km/h)).

Interrupting the opening/closing of the boot

When the tailgate is being opened or closed electrically, you can interrupt its movement at any point by pressing push-button **D**, the control **A** or button **B**.

You can then open or close the tailgate electrically or manually, if necessary moving it in the opposite direction to release it.

Memorisation of an intermediate position

You can store an opening angle for the tailgate:

- ☞ Manually or automatically move the tailgate to the required position.
- ☞ Make a long press on push-button **D**. The system emits a short audible beep.
- ☞ Release the push-button **D**.

4 Cancelling the memorisation

With the tailgate in the intermediate position, you can cancel the stored position:

- ☞ Make a long press on push-button **D**. The system emits a long audible beep.
- ☞ Release the push-button **D**. The tailgate will return to the fully open position at the next use.

Electrical protection of the motor

If the tailgate is repeatedly opened and closed in quick succession, the motor can start to overheat and then cut out, preventing opening and closing of the tailgate.

Allow the motor to cool down for ten minutes without opening or closing the tailgate.

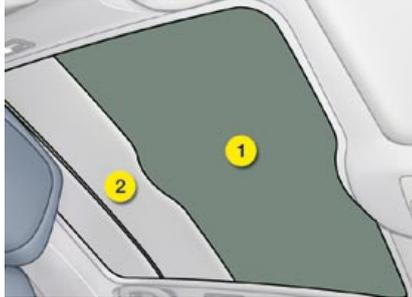
Closing in manual back-up mode remains possible.

To avoid risk of injury, make sure that no one is in the vicinity of the boot while opening and closing.

If the tailgate is carrying extra weight (snow, bicycle carrier, etc.) there is a risk of it closing under this load. Support the tailgate or first unload the bicycle carrier or clear the snow.

When using an automatic car wash, don't forget to lock the vehicle so as to avoid any risk of motorised opening of the tailgate.

GLASS PANORAMIC ROOF (TOURER)



This device comprises a tinted glass panoramic surface **1** to improve brightness and vision in the passenger compartment.

It is fitted with an electrical blind **2** to help maintain a comfortable temperature and reduce noise.

SEQUENTIAL ELECTRICAL BLIND



Opening

☞ Press control **A**.

Pressing to the **1st notch** allows you to open the blind step by step.

Pressing to the **2nd notch** allows you to fully open the blind.

The blind stops in the closest pre-defined position (11 positions) as soon as you release the control.

Closing

☞ Press control **B**.

Press to the **first notch** to close the blind step by step.

Press to the **second notch** to close the blind completely.

The blind stops at the nearest pre-set position (11 positions) as soon as you release the control.

Anti-pinch

If the blind meets an obstacle whilst closing, it stops and opens partially again.

You must re-initialise the anti-pinch function within 5 seconds of the blind stopping:

☞ press control **B** until the blind is fully closed (closing in steps of a few centimetres).

After a battery disconnection, or if there has been a malfunction, you have to re-initialise the anti-pinch function:

- ☞ press control **B** to the 2nd notch (fully closed),
- ☞ wait until the blind is fully closed,
- ☞ press control **B** for at least 3 seconds.

If the blind opens randomly during a closing operation, and straight after the blind stops:

- ☞ Press control **B** until the blind closes fully.

During these operations, the anti-pinch function does not operate.

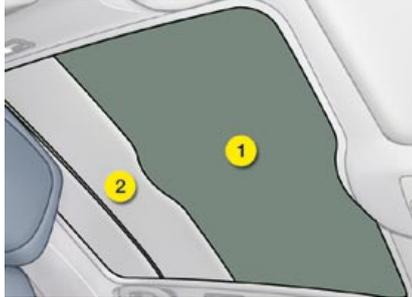
In the event of anything being caught when the blind is moving, you must reverse the movement of the blind. To do so, reverse the position of the control.

When the driver is operating the blind, he or she must always make sure that the passengers are not preventing it from closing properly.

The driver must ensure that his passengers are using the blind correctly.

Pay special attention to children when operating the blind.

GLASS PANORAMIC ROOF (TOURER)



This device comprises a tinted glass panoramic surface **1** to improve brightness and vision in the passenger compartment.

It is fitted with an electrical blind **2** to help maintain a comfortable temperature and reduce noise.

SEQUENTIAL ELECTRICAL BLIND



Opening

☞ Press control **A**.

Pressing to the **1st notch** allows you to open the blind step by step.

Pressing to the **2nd notch** allows you to fully open the blind.

The blind stops in the closest pre-defined position (11 positions) as soon as you release the control.

Closing

☞ Press control **B**.

Press to the **first notch** to close the blind step by step.

Press to the **second notch** to close the blind completely.

The blind stops at the nearest pre-set position (11 positions) as soon as you release the control.

Anti-pinch

If the blind meets an obstacle whilst closing, it stops and opens partially again.

You must re-initialise the anti-pinch function within 5 seconds of the blind stopping:

☞ press control **B** until the blind is fully closed (closing in steps of a few centimetres).

After a battery disconnection, or if there has been a malfunction, you have to re-initialise the anti-pinch function:

☞ press control **B** to the 2nd notch (fully closed),

☞ wait until the blind is fully closed,

☞ press control **B** for at least 3 seconds.

If the blind opens randomly during a closing operation, and straight after the blind stops:

☞ Press control **B** until the blind closes fully.

During these operations, the anti-pinch function does not operate.

In the event of anything being caught when the blind is moving, you must reverse the movement of the blind. To do so, reverse the position of the control.

When the driver is operating the blind, he or she must always make sure that the passengers are not preventing it from closing properly.

The driver must ensure that his passengers are using the blind correctly.

Pay special attention to children when operating the blind.

FUEL TANK

Capacity of the tank: approximately 71 litres.

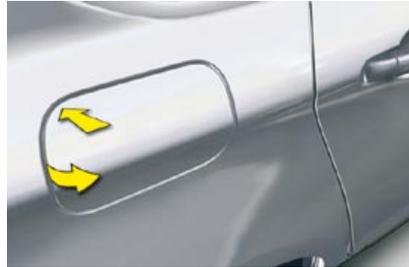
Low fuel level



- When the minimum level in the tank is reached, this warning light comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and a message on the multi-function display.

You have enough fuel left to drive approximately 30 miles (approx. 50 km).

Opening the fuel flap



- Press at the top left corner, then pull open from the left.

Refuelling



- turn the key a quarter turn to lock and unlock the filler cap,
- when refuelling, place the cap on hook **A**,
- fill the tank, but **do not persist after the third cut-off**; this could cause your vehicle to malfunction.

While you are refuelling, the engine must be stopped and the ignition switched off.

For a petrol engine with a catalytic converter, unleaded fuel is compulsory.

The filler neck is narrower to ensure that only unleaded petrol can be put in.

Fuel quality

A label inside the filler flap tells you which type of fuel to use.



DIESEL

The petrol engines are designed to run on RON 95.

However, for better performance (petrol engine), we recommend RON 98.

If you should put in fuel that is not suitable for your vehicle's engine type, it is imperative to have the tank drained before you start the engine again.

BioFlex engine



A Bioflex vehicle is one that has been designed to operate equally on unleaded petrol (95 or 98 RON) or on bioethanol (in Europe this is a mixture of 85 % ethanol and 15 % unleaded petrol, known as E85).

As a result, no matter how much fuel remains in the tank, and whatever this fuel may be (unleaded petrol, E85 or a mixture of the two) you can refuel at any time with unleaded petrol (95 or 98 RON) or with bioethanol (E85).

There is no problem in running this vehicle on only unleaded petrol.

In winter conditions, starting from cold may sometimes seem difficult. During periods of very cold weather we recommend the use of 95 or 98 unleaded petrol in preference to E85 so as to ensure optimum starting performance.

LIGHTING CONTROLS

System for selection and control of the various front and rear lights providing the vehicle's lighting.

Main lighting

The various front and rear lights of the vehicle are designed to adapt the driver's visibility progressively in relation to the climatic conditions:

- side lights, to be seen,
- dipped headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear,
- directional headlamps for improved visibility when cornering.

Additional lighting

Other lights are installed to fulfil the requirements of particular driving conditions:

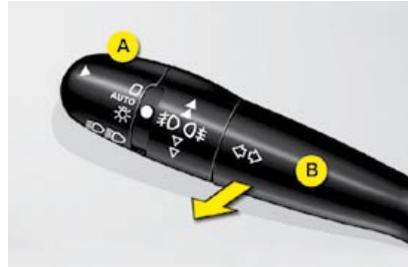
- a rear fog lamp to be seen from a distance,
- front fog lamps for even better visibility,
- daytime lights to be seen during the day.

Programming

Various automatic lighting control modes are also available according to the following options:

- guide-me-home lighting,
- automatic lighting,
- directional lighting.

Manual controls



The lighting commands are issued directly by the driver by means of the ring **A** and the lever **B**.

A. main lighting mode selection ring, with:



lights off,



automatic switching on of the lights,



side lights only,



dipped headlamps or main beam headlamps.

B. lever for inversion of the lights by pulling: dipped headlamps/main beam headlamps.

In the lights off and side lights modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps directly ("headlamp flash") for as long as he pulls the lever.

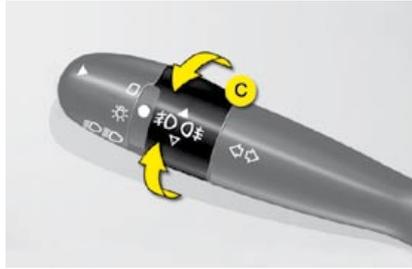
Displays

Lighting of the corresponding indicator light on the instrument panel confirms the selective switching on of the lighting selected.

C. fog lamps selection ring.

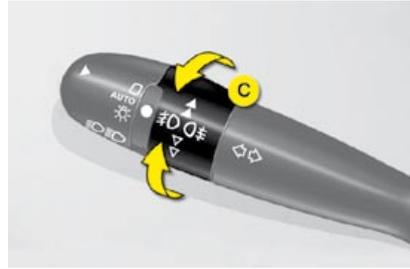
The fog lamps operate with the side lights and the dipped and main beam headlamps.

Model with rear foglamps only



- 1st turn forwards: lighting of rear foglamps.
- 1st turn rearwards: extinction of rear foglamps.

Model with front and rear foglamps



- 1st turn forwards: lighting of front foglamps.
- 2nd turn forwards: lighting of rear foglamps.
- 1st turn rearwards: extinction of rear foglamps.
- 2nd turn rearwards: extinction of front foglamps.

In good or rainy weather, both day and night, the front fog lamps and the rear fog lamps are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or snow.

In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the fog lamps and dipped headlamps manually as the brightness sensor may detect sufficient light.

Do not forget to switch off the front fog lamps and the rear fog lamps when they are no longer necessary.

Lights on buzzer

The triggering of an audible signal when a front door is opened warns the driver that he has forgotten to switch off his vehicle's lights, with the ignition off and in manual lights mode.

In this case, switching off the lights stops the audible signal.

With the ignition off, if the dipped headlamps remain on, they will switch off automatically after thirty minutes to prevent discharging of the battery.

Daytime-running lamps

System which switches on special lights at the front, to make the vehicle more visible by day.

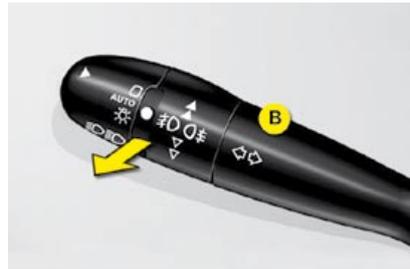
They light up automatically and permanently, when the engine is running, if:

- The function is activated* in the "Main Menu" of the instrument panel screen.
- The lighting control is at position **0** or **AUTO**.
- All the headlamps are off.

You can deactivate* this function using the "Main Menu" of the instrument panel screen.

Manual guide-me-home lighting

The temporary maintaining of the dipped headlamps lighting after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



Switching on

- ☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lever **B**.
- ☞ A second "headlamp flash" switches the function off again.

Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

Automatic lighting

The side lights and dipped headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when a low level of external light is detected or in certain cases of activation of the windscreen wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lights are switched off automatically.



Activation

- ☞ Turn ring **A** to the "**AUTO**" position. The automatic lighting is accompanied by a message on the multifunction display.

Deactivation

- ☞ Turn ring **A** to a position other than "**AUTO**". Deactivation is accompanied by a message on the multifunction display.

* According to country.

Daytime-running lamps

System which switches on special lights at the front, to make the vehicle more visible by day.

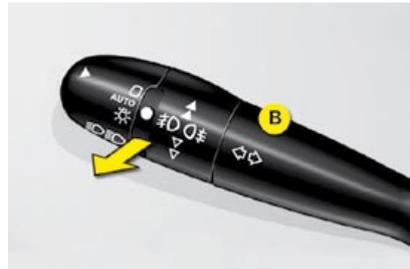
They light up automatically and permanently, when the engine is running, if:

- The function is activated* in the "Main Menu" of the instrument panel screen.
- The lighting control is at position **0** or **AUTO**.
- All the headlamps are off.

You can deactivate* this function using the "Main Menu" of the instrument panel screen.

Manual guide-me-home lighting

The temporary maintaining of the dipped headlamps lighting after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



Switching on

- ☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lever **B**.
- ☞ A second "headlamp flash" switches the function off again.

Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

Automatic lighting

The side lights and dipped headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when a low level of external light is detected or in certain cases of activation of the windscreen wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lights are switched off automatically.



Activation

- ☞ Turn ring **A** to the "**AUTO**" position. The automatic lighting is accompanied by a message on the multifunction display.

Deactivation

- ☞ Turn ring **A** to a position other than "**AUTO**". Deactivation is accompanied by a message on the multifunction display.

* According to country.

Linked with the automatic "Guide-me-home" lighting

Link with the automatic lighting provides the "guide-me-home" lighting with the following additional options:

- selection of the duration of maintaining of the lighting for 15, 30 or 60 seconds in the vehicle parameters on the multifunction display configuration menu,
- automatic activation of "guide-me-home" lighting when automatic lighting is in operation.

MANUAL ADJUSTMENT OF THE HEADLAMPS



To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of the halogen bulb headlamps must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
 - 3 people.
1. 5 people.
 - Intermediate setting.
2. 5 people + maximum authorised loads.
 - Intermediate setting.
3. Driver + maximum authorised loads.

Initial setting is position "0".

AUTOMATIC ADJUSTMENT OF THE DIRECTIONAL HEADLAMPS



In order to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, this system corrects the height of the xenon headlamps beam automatically and when stationary, in relation to the load in the vehicle.

SERVICE

If a malfunction occurs, this warning light is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction display.

The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.

Do not touch the xenon headlamps. Consult a CITROËN dealer.

Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction of the brightness sensor, the lights come on and a message appears on the multifunction display, accompanied by an audible signal.

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

In fog or snow, the brightness sensor may detect sufficient light. Therefore, the lights will not come on automatically.

Do not cover the brightness sensor, linked with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the interior mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

Linked with the automatic "Guide-me-home" lighting

Link with the automatic lighting provides the "guide-me-home" lighting with the following additional options:

- selection of the duration of maintaining of the lighting for 15, 30 or 60 seconds in the vehicle parameters on the multifunction display configuration menu,
- automatic activation of "guide-me-home" lighting when automatic lighting is in operation.

MANUAL ADJUSTMENT OF THE HEADLAMPS



To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of the halogen bulb headlamps must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
 - 3 people.
1. 5 people.
 - Intermediate setting.
2. 5 people + maximum authorised loads.
 - Intermediate setting.
3. Driver + maximum authorised loads.

Initial setting is position "0".

AUTOMATIC ADJUSTMENT OF THE DIRECTIONAL HEADLAMPS



In order to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, this system corrects the height of the xenon headlamps beam automatically and when stationary, in relation to the load in the vehicle.

SERVICE

If a malfunction occurs, this warning light is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction display.

The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.

Do not touch the xenon headlamps. Consult a CITROËN dealer.

Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction of the brightness sensor, the lights come on and a message appears on the multifunction display, accompanied by an audible signal.

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

In fog or snow, the brightness sensor may detect sufficient light. Therefore, the lights will not come on automatically.

Do not cover the brightness sensor, linked with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the interior mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

DIRECTIONAL LIGHTING

"Bend lighting" function

With dipped or main beams, this function provides additional lighting for the inside of a bend, when the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (approx 40 km/h).

This lighting is most useful when travelling at low and medium speed (urban driving, winding road, inter-sections, parking manoeuvres...).

Activation

This function is activated:

- when the direction indicator is activated,
- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.



without bend lighting



with bend lighting

Deactivation

This function is deactivated:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- when stationary or at very low speed,
- when reverse gear is engaged,
- when the directional headlamps are switched off.

Directional headlamps function

When the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, this function, associated with the "bend lighting" function, enables the light beam to follow the direction of the road.

The use of this function, linked with the xenon headlamps only, considerably improves the quality of your lighting when cornering.



without directional lighting



with directional lighting

Programming

The function is activated or deactivated via the instrument panel display "Main Menu".

To do this, select "Vehicle parameters\Lighting\Directional headlamps".

Operating fault



If a malfunction occurs, this warning light flashes on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message on the multifunction display.

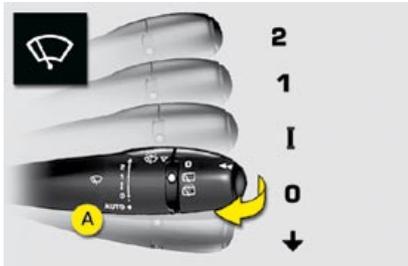
Consult a CITROËN dealer.

When stationary or moving at very low speed or when reverse gear is engaged, the function is inactive. The status of the function remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

WIPER CONTROLS

System for selection and control of the various front and rear wiping modes for the elimination of rain and cleaning.

The vehicle's various front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility progressively in relation to the climatic conditions.



Programming

Various automatic wiper control modes are also available according to the following options:

- automatic wiping for the wind-screen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

Manual controls

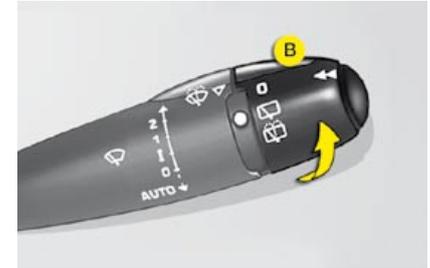
The wiper commands are issued directly by the driver by means of the lever **A** and the ring **B**.

Windscreen wipers

A. wiping speed selection lever:

- 2** fast (heavy rain),
- 1** normal (moderate rain),
- I** intermittent (proportional to the speed of the vehicle),
- 0** park,
- ↓ single wipe (press downwards),
or
- AUTO** ↓ automatic, then single wipe (see following page).

Rear wiper (Tourer)



B. rear wiper selection ring:



park,



intermittent wipe,



wash-wipe (set duration).

If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a tailgate bicycle carrier, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the instrument panel display configuration menu.

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wipers are operating.

Programming

The function is activated or deactivated via the instrument panel display configuration menu.

This function is activated by default.

Automatic windscreen wiping

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the interior mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.



Windscreen and headlamp wash

☞ Pull the windscreen wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the windscreen wipers operate for a fixed period.

If the dipped headlamps are on, the headlamp washers operate at the same time.

Activation

This is controlled manually by the driver by pushing lever **A** to the "AUTO" position.

It is accompanied by a message on the instrument panel display.

Switching off

This is controlled manually by the driver by moving lever **A** upwards and returning it to position "0".

It is accompanied by a message on the instrument panel display.

The automatic wiping must be reactivated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute, by pushing lever **A** downwards.

Operating fault

If an automatic wiping malfunction occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer.

Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the brightness sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the interior mirror.

Switch off the automatic wiping when using an automatic car wash.

In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wiping.

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wipers are operating.

Programming

The function is activated or deactivated via the instrument panel display configuration menu.

This function is activated by default.

Automatic windscreen wiping

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the interior mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.



Windscreen and headlamp wash

☞ Pull the windscreen wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the windscreen wipers operate for a fixed period.

If the dipped headlamps are on, the headlamp washers operate at the same time.

Activation

This is controlled manually by the driver by pushing lever **A** to the "AUTO" position.

It is accompanied by a message on the instrument panel display.

Switching off

This is controlled manually by the driver by moving lever **A** upwards and returning it to position "0".

It is accompanied by a message on the instrument panel display.

The automatic wiping must be reactivated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute, by pushing lever **A** downwards.

Operating fault

If an automatic wiping malfunction occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

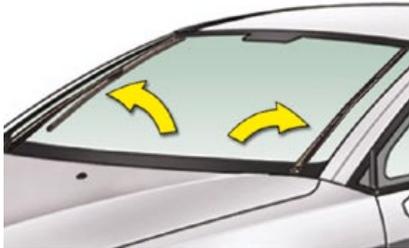
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer.

Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the brightness sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the interior mirror.

Switch off the automatic wiping when using an automatic car wash.

In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wiping.

Special position of the windscreen wipers



In the minute following switching off of the ignition, any action on the stalk positions the wipers in the centre of the windscreen.

This action enables you to position the wiper blades for winter parking, cleaning or replacement.

To park the wipers after this has been done, switch on the ignition and operate the stalk.

For optimum and lasting wiping of the "flat-blade" wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- change them approximately every 6 months,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen.

COURTESY LIGHTS

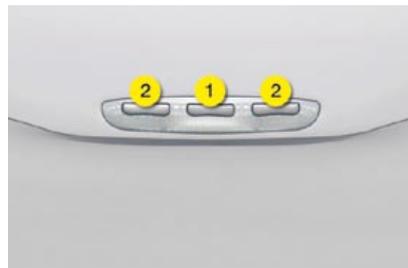
Selection and control of the various passenger compartment lights.

Front courtesy light



1. Front courtesy light
2. Map reading lights

Rear courtesy light



1. Rear courtesy light
2. Map reading lights



In this position, the courtesy light comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when a door is opened,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

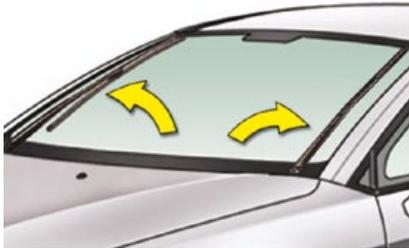


Permanently off.



Permanent lighting.

Special position of the windscreen wipers



In the minute following switching off of the ignition, any action on the stalk positions the wipers in the centre of the windscreen.

This action enables you to position the wiper blades for winter parking, cleaning or replacement.

To park the wipers after this has been done, switch on the ignition and operate the stalk.

For optimum and lasting wiping of the "flat-blade" wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- change them approximately every 6 months,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen.

COURTESY LIGHTS

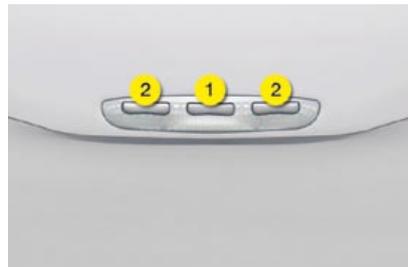
Selection and control of the various passenger compartment lights.

Front courtesy light



1. Front courtesy light
2. Map reading lights

Rear courtesy light



1. Rear courtesy light
2. Map reading lights



In this position, the courtesy light comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when a door is opened,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Permanently off.



Permanent lighting.

In permanent lighting mode, different lighting times are available:

- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

Panoramic glass roof rear reading lights (Tourer)



5 Map reading lights

- ☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

With the key in position or with the ignition on:

- ☞ Press the corresponding switch.

The reading light concerned comes on for ten minutes.

The rear reading lights come on:

- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when the vehicle is unlocked.

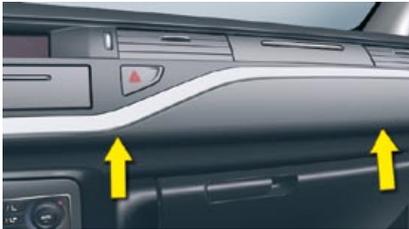
They switch off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on.

AMBIENT LIGHTING

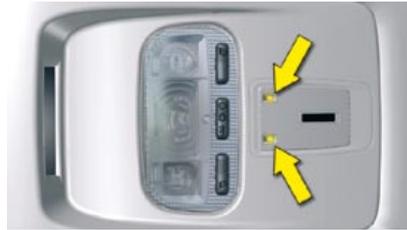
Your vehicle is equipped with warm and welcoming ambient lighting. A soft orange light is emitted.

Dashboard



Operation

When starting the engine, with the vehicle lights on, lights located along the dashboard are activated.



Central console

The lights are located on the roof console, near the front interior lamp. They light up the central console.

Operation

These lights are activated with the automatic switching on of the lights, when the exterior light is poor. They are deactivated when the instrument panel goes out.

The intensity of the lighting varies along with that of the instrument panel.

☞ Press buttons **A** to increase or reduce the intensity of the lighting.

DOOR LIGHTING

Door opening controls lighting



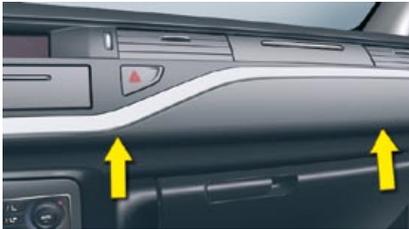
They are located on the front and rear interior door opening controls.

The rear door opening controls lighting is deactivated if child safety is activated.

AMBIENT LIGHTING

Your vehicle is equipped with warm and welcoming ambient lighting. A soft orange light is emitted.

Dashboard



Operation

When starting the engine, with the vehicle lights on, lights located along the dashboard are activated.



Central console

The lights are located on the roof console, near the front interior lamp. They light up the central console.

Operation

These lights are activated with the automatic switching on of the lights, when the exterior light is poor. They are deactivated when the instrument panel goes out.

The intensity of the lighting varies along with that of the instrument panel.

☞ Press buttons **A** to increase or reduce the intensity of the lighting.

DOOR LIGHTING

Door opening controls lighting



They are located on the front and rear interior door opening controls.

The rear door opening controls lighting is deactivated if child safety is activated.

Front door storage pockets automatic lighting



WELCOME LIGHTING

The welcome lighting is made up of:

- The interior (roof) lamps.
- The floor lighting.
- The pavement lighting when a door is open.

Floor lighting



Pavement lighting



With the door open, this lights up the ground next to the vehicle.

5

A white light is emitted to light up the door storage pockets.

Operation

The lighting comes on automatically when you place your hand inside the storage pocket. It goes out a few seconds after you remove your hand.

In the front and the rear of the vehicle, when a door is opened, this lights up the interior of the vehicle.

Front door storage pockets automatic lighting



5

A white light is emitted to light up the door storage pockets.

Operation

The lighting comes on automatically when you place your hand inside the storage pocket. It goes out a few seconds after you remove your hand.

WELCOME LIGHTING

The welcome lighting is made up of:

- The interior (roof) lamps.
- The floor lighting.
- The pavement lighting when a door is open.

Floor lighting



In the front and the rear of the vehicle, when a door is opened, this lights up the interior of the vehicle.

Pavement lighting



With the door open, this lights up the ground next to the vehicle.

SUN VISOR

System which protects against sun from ahead or from the side and courtesy system with illuminated mirror.



☞ With the ignition on, lift the flap; the mirror is illuminated automatically.

To prevent dazzle from ahead, fold the visor downwards.

It can be disengaged from its central fixing and pivoted over to the side windows if required.

AIR CONDITIONED GLOVEBOX



☞ To open the glovebox, pull on the handle and lower the lid.

The glovebox has a manually closable air conditioning vent **B**.

It has 2 or 3 sockets **C** to connect audio/video equipment.

It has automatic lighting.



Whilst driving, the glovebox should be kept closed.

SKI FLAP



A flap in the backrest, located to the rear of the armrest, facilitates the carrying of long objects.

To open

- ☞ Lower the rear armrest.
- ☞ Pull the flap handle down.
- ☞ Lower the flap.
- ☞ Load the objects from inside the boot.

Ensure that the objects are well secured and that they do not impede the operation of the gear lever.

MATS



6

Equipment available for the driver and front passenger.

Removing

- ☞ Slide the seat back as far as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the fixings, then the mat.

Refitting

- ☞ Position the mat correctly,
- ☞ clip the fixings,
- ☞ check that the mat is held in place correctly.

To avoid your feet becoming jammed under the pedals:

- only use mats which are suitable for the fixings already present in the vehicle. The use of these fixings is essential,
- never stack up more than 1 mat.

The use of a mat not approved by CITROËN may obstruct access to the pedals and hinder the cruise control/speed limiter function.

Floor mats approved by CITROËN are fitted with a 3rd fixing located in the pedal area to avoid any risk of interference with the pedals.

FRONT ARMREST



Comfort and storage system for the driver and front passenger.

Adjustment

To optimise your driving position:

- ☞ lift the control **A**,
- ☞ push the armrest forwards.

The armrest returns to its initial position when you push it rearwards.

Cup-holder



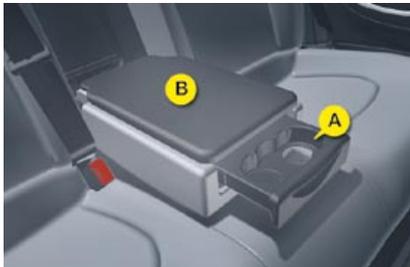
- ☞ Lift the armrest to access the cup holder.

Driver's oddments tray



- ☞ Pull the handle towards you.

REAR ARMREST



Comfort and storage system for the rear passengers.

Cup-holder

The rear cup-holder **A** is located in the rear central armrest.

- ☞ Lower the rear armrest.
- ☞ Pull forwards to extract the cup-holder.

Storage

- ☞ Lift up the upper part of the rear central armrest to access storage space **B**.

12 V ACCESSORIES SOCKET



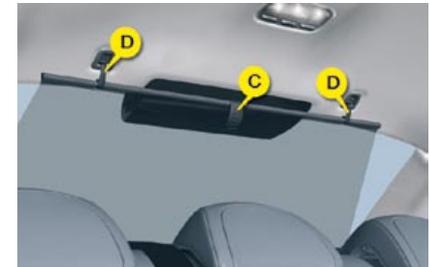
This is located in the rear ashtray.
Max power: 100 W.

SIDE BLINDS



- ☞ Pull on the tab **A** and position the blind on the hook **B**.

REAR BLIND (SALOON)



- ☞ pull on the tab **C** to unroll the blind,
- ☞ position the blind on the hooks **D**.

SUN VISOR

System which protects against sun from ahead or from the side and courtesy system with illuminated mirror.



☞ With the ignition on, lift the flap; the mirror is illuminated automatically.

To prevent dazzle from ahead, fold the visor downwards.

It can be disengaged from its central fixing and pivoted over to the side windows if required.

AIR CONDITIONED GLOVEBOX



☞ To open the glovebox, pull on the handle and lower the lid.

The glovebox has a manually closable air conditioning vent **B**.

It has 2 or 3 sockets **C** to connect audio/video equipment.

It has automatic lighting.



Whilst driving, the glovebox should be kept closed.

SKI FLAP



A flap in the backrest, located to the rear of the armrest, facilitates the carrying of long objects.

To open

- ☞ Lower the rear armrest.
- ☞ Pull the flap handle down.
- ☞ Lower the flap.
- ☞ Load the objects from inside the boot.

Ensure that the objects are well secured and that they do not impede the operation of the gear lever.

MATS



6

Equipment available for the driver and front passenger.

Removing

- ☞ Slide the seat back as far as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the fixings, then the mat.

Refitting

- ☞ Position the mat correctly,
- ☞ clip the fixings,
- ☞ check that the mat is held in place correctly.

To avoid your feet becoming jammed under the pedals:

- only use mats which are suitable for the fixings already present in the vehicle. The use of these fixings is essential,
- never stack up more than 1 mat.

The use of a mat not approved by CITROËN may obstruct access to the pedals and hinder the cruise control/speed limiter function.

Floor mats approved by CITROËN are fitted with a 3rd fixing located in the pedal area to avoid any risk of interference with the pedals.

FRONT ARMREST



Comfort and storage system for the driver and front passenger.

Adjustment

To optimise your driving position:

- ☞ lift the control **A**,
- ☞ push the armrest forwards.

The armrest returns to its initial position when you push it rearwards.

Cup-holder



- ☞ Lift the armrest to access the cup holder.

MATS



6

Equipment available for the driver and front passenger.

Removing

- ☞ Slide the seat back as far as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the fixings, then the mat.

Refitting

- ☞ Position the mat correctly,
- ☞ clip the fixings,
- ☞ check that the mat is held in place correctly.

To avoid your feet becoming jammed under the pedals:

- only use mats which are suitable for the fixings already present in the vehicle. The use of these fixings is essential,
- never stack up more than 1 mat.

The use of a mat not approved by CITROËN may obstruct access to the pedals and hinder the cruise control/speed limiter function.

Floor mats approved by CITROËN are fitted with a 3rd fixing located in the pedal area to avoid any risk of interference with the pedals.

FRONT ARMREST



Comfort and storage system for the driver and front passenger.

Adjustment

To optimise your driving position:

- ☞ lift the control **A**,
- ☞ push the armrest forwards.

The armrest returns to its initial position when you push it rearwards.

Cup-holder



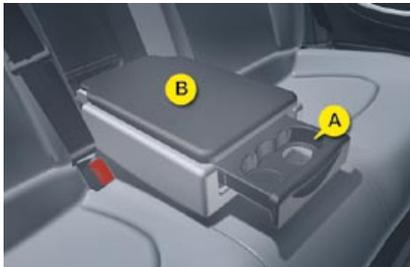
- ☞ Lift the armrest to access the cup holder.

Driver's oddments tray



- ☞ Pull the handle towards you.

REAR ARMREST



Comfort and storage system for the rear passengers.

Cup-holder

The rear cup-holder **A** is located in the rear central armrest.

- ☞ Lower the rear armrest.
- ☞ Pull forwards to extract the cup-holder.

Storage

- ☞ Lift up the upper part of the rear central armrest to access storage space **B**.

12 V ACCESSORIES SOCKET



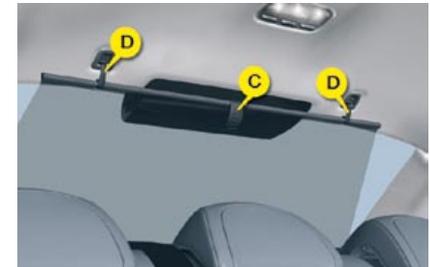
This is located in the rear ashtray.
Max power: 100 W.

SIDE BLINDS



- ☞ Pull on the tab **A** and position the blind on the hook **B**.

REAR BLIND (SALOON)



- ☞ pull on the tab **C** to unroll the blind,
- ☞ position the blind on the hooks **D**.

Driver's oddments tray



- ☞ Pull the handle towards you.

Cup-holder

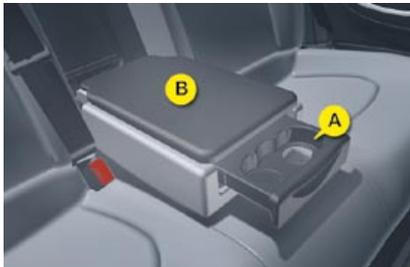
The rear cup-holder **A** is located in the rear central armrest.

- ☞ Lower the rear armrest.
- ☞ Pull forwards to extract the cup-holder.

Storage

- ☞ Lift up the upper part of the rear central armrest to access storage space **B**.

REAR ARMREST



Comfort and storage system for the rear passengers.

12 V ACCESSORIES SOCKET



This is located in the rear ashtray.
Max power: 100 W.

SIDE BLINDS



- ☞ Pull on the tab **A** and position the blind on the hook **B**.

REAR BLIND (SALOON)



- ☞ pull on the tab **C** to unroll the blind,
- ☞ position the blind on the hooks **D**.

BOOT LAYOUT (SALOON)



6

1. Battery for vehicles with V6 HDi engine.
2. Pull strap (spare wheel storage).

3. Boot lamp.
4. 6 CD changer.

Luggage securing rings

☞ Use the 4 securing rings on the boot floor to secure your luggage. For safety reasons, in case of the need for sharp braking, you are advised to place heavy objects as far forward in the boot as possible.

BOOT LAYOUT (TOURER)



1. **Hook**
Allows you to hook shopping bags.
2. **Torch**
To recharge, return it to its storage position.
3. **Storage net or Battery compartment (for vehicles with V6 2.7 HDi engine).**
This provides access to the battery.

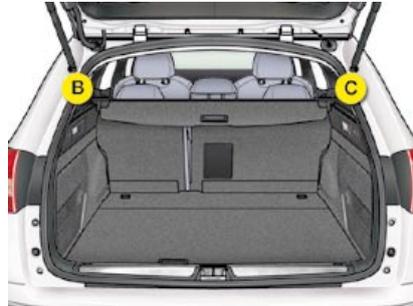


1. **Luggage-cover blind**
(see details on following page)
2. **Luggage securing rings**
Use the 4 stowing rings provided on the boot floor to secure your loads.
For safety reasons in the event of sharp braking, you are advised to place heavy objects as far forwards as possible.
3. **Hooks**
These allow a cargo net to be fitted (see details on following page).



1. **Boot lamp**
2. **12 V accessories socket (100 W maximum)**
Cigar-lighter type 12 volts socket. It is located on the rear right-hand trim, and is supplied from the ignition position.
3. **Loading assistance**
You can change the height of the vehicle in order to make loading or unloading easier.
4. **Hook**
Allows you to hook shopping bags.
5. **Storage net or 6 CD changer**

LUGGAGE COVER (TOURER)

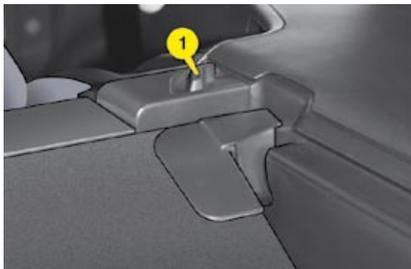


6

To roll up

- ☞ Press the handle (PRESS) gently. The luggage cover rolls up automatically.

The moving part **A** can be folded along the rear bench seat backrest.



To remove

- ☞ Compress the control **1** and lift the luggage cover on the right then on the left to remove it.

To install

- ☞ Position the left-hand end of the luggage cover roller in its location **B** behind the rear bench seat.
- ☞ Compress the roller control **1** and put the roller in place in its location **C** on the right.
- ☞ Release the control to secure the luggage cover.
- ☞ Unroll it to its fastening on the boot pillar.

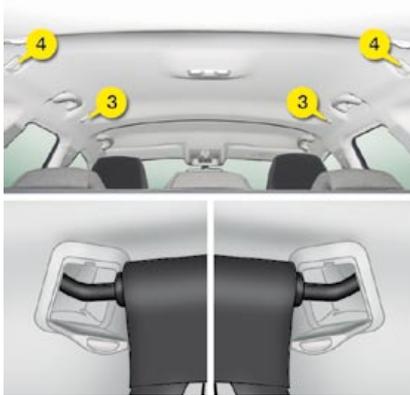
High load retaining net (Tourer)



Hooked onto the special upper and lower fixings, this permits use of the entire loading volume up to the roof:

- behind the rear seats (row 2),
- behind the front seats (row 1) when the rear seats are folded.

When positioning the net, check that the strap loops are visible from the boot; this will make slackening or tightening easier.



Installation

- ☞ fold down the backs of the rear seats,
- ☞ position the high load retaining net roller above the two rails 1 located behind the rear seats (2/3 bench seat). The two notches 2 must be placed above the two rails,
- ☞ slide the two rails 1 into the notches 2 and push the roller (lengthways) from right to left to secure it,
- ☞ reposition the rear seat backs.

Row 1



To use it in row 1:

- ☞ fold down the backs of the rear seats,
- ☞ open the covers 3 of the corresponding upper fixings,
- ☞ unroll the high load retaining net and position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding fixing cover. Check that the hook is secured in the rail located inside the cover 3,
- ☞ pull the high load retaining net's metal bar to position the other hook in the second fixing cover.

Row 2



To use it in row 2:

- ☞ open the covers 4 of the corresponding upper fixings,
- ☞ from the rear bench seat, unroll the high load retaining net, pushing it to detach it from the retaining hooks,
- ☞ position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding fixing cover. Check that the hook is secured in the rail located inside the cover,
- ☞ position the other hook in the second fixing cover and pull the metal bar towards you.

GENERAL POINTS RELATING TO CHILD SEATS

Although one of CITROËN's main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please follow these precautions:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one metre fifty tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX* mountings,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for the transportation of children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearwards-facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

INSTALLING A CHILD SEAT USING A THREE POINT SEAT BELT

"Rearwards-facing"

When a "rearwards-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, it is essential that the passenger air bag is disarmed. Otherwise, **the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the air bag were to inflate.**



"Forwards-facing"

When a "forwards-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal position with the seat back upright and leave the passenger air bag armed.

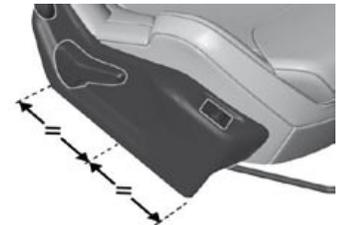


7

CITROËN recommends that children should travel in the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **"rearwards-facing"** up to the age of 2,
- **"forwards-facing"** over the age of 2.

Intermediate longitudinal position



* The rules for transporting children are specific to each country. Consult the current legislation in your country.



Passenger air bag OFF



CHILD SEATS RECOMMENDED BY CITROËN

CITROËN offers a complete range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**:

Group 0: from birth to 10 kg
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg

Groups 1, 2 and 3: from 9 to 36 kg



L1
 "RÖMER
 Baby-Safe Plus"
 Installed in the
 rearwards-facing
 position.



L2
 "KIDDY Life"
 The use of
 the restraining
 cushion is
 compulsory for
 the transportation
 of young children
 (from 9 to 18 kg).

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L3
 "RECARO Start"



L4
 "KLIPPAN Optima"
 From the age
 of 6 years
 (approximately
 22 kg),
 the booster
 is used on its own.

CHILD SEATS FITTED BY MEANS OF THE VEHICLE SEAT BELT

In conformity with European law, this table shows you the possibilities for the installation of universally approved child seats (a) using a seat belt, depending on the weight of the child and the seating position in the vehicle.

	Seat position(s)	Weight of child			
		Groups 0 (c) and 0+ < 13 kg	Group 1 9 to 18 kg	Group 2 15 to 25 kg	Group 3 22 to 36 kg
7 Row 1	Front passenger (b) with height adjustment	U (R)	U (R)	U (R)	U (R)
	Front passenger (b) without height adjustment	U	U	U	U
Row 2	Lateral rear	U	U	U	U
	Central rear	U	U	U	U

(a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Consult the current legislation for your country before driving with your child in this seat.

(c) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Shells and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

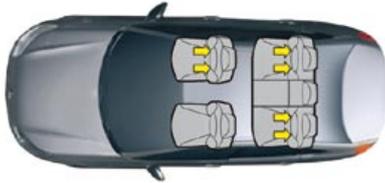
U: seat position suitable for installation of universally approved rearwards-facing and/or forwards-facing child seat.

U (R): As **U**, with the vehicle seat, which must be adjusted to the highest position.

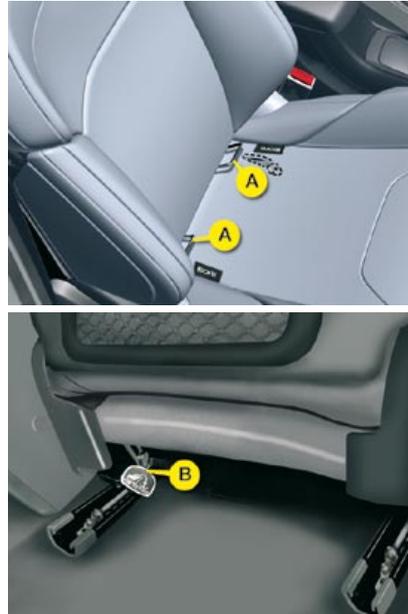
"ISOFIX" MOUNTINGS

Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **new ISOFIX regulations**.

The rear side seats and the front passenger seat are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings.



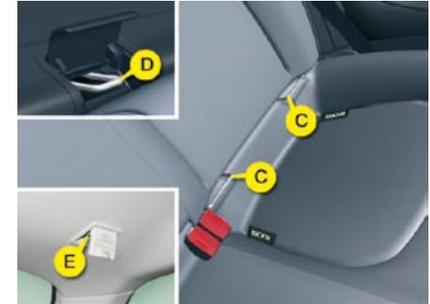
In the front



These are three rings for the front passenger seat:

- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a label,
- a ring **B**, fixed at the bottom of the rear of the seat back, used to secure the upper strap of the child seat.

In the rear



Saloon

These are three rings for each rear side seat:

- two lower rings **C**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a label,
- an upper ring **D**, fixed to the rear shelf, concealed under a flap with the logo TOP TETHER behind the head restraint.

Tourer

- two lower rings **C**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a label,
- an upper ring **E**, fixed to the roof on the boot side, concealed under a flap with the logo TOP TETHER.

This ISOFIX mounting system guarantees you fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two locks which are secured easily on the two rings **A** or **C**, following installation of the guides (supplied with the seat).

Some also have an **upper strap** which is attached to the ring **B**, **D** or **E**.

To attach this strap in the front, raise the vehicle seat's head restraint and pass the upper strap between the rods of the head restraint. Then fix the hook on the ring **B** and tighten the upper strap.

To attach this strap in the rear, remove the vehicle seat's head restraint and stow it. Lift the cover on the rear shelf (Saloon) or the roof (Tourer). Then fix the hook on the ring **D** or **E** and tighten the upper strap.

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

For information regarding the ISOFIX child seats which can be installed in your vehicle, consult the summary table for the location of the ISOFIX child seats.

ADVICE ON CHILD SEATS

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses **keeping the slack** in relation to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

For optimum installation of the "forwards-facing" child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is in contact with the back of the vehicle's seat and that the head restraint does not cause any discomfort.

If the head restraint has to be removed, ensure that it is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking.

Children under the age of 10 must not travel in the "forwards-facing" position on the front passenger seat, unless the rear seats are already occupied by other children, cannot be used or are absent.

Disarm the passenger air bag* when a "rearwards-facing" child seat is installed on the front seat. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the air bag were to inflate.

Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.

CITROËN recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- one or more children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors, use the "Child lock".

Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

* According to country and current local legislation.

ISOFIX CHILD SEAT RECOMMENDED BY CITROËN AND APPROVED FOR YOUR VEHICLE

RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX (size category **B1**)

Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg



Installed in the forwards-facing position.
Fitted with an upper strap to be secured on the upper ring **B**, **D** or **E**, referred to as the TOP TETHER.
Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying.

7

This child seat can also be used on seats which are not fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three point seat belt.

Follow the instructions for fitting the child seat given in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.

TABLE SUMMARISING THE LOCATION OF ISOFIX CHILD SEATS

In conformity with European law (ECE 16), this table shows you the possibilities for the installation of ISOFIX child seats to seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX anchoring points.

For ISOFIX universal and semi-universal child seats, the ISOFIX size class, defined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is shown on the child seat to the right of the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of child/Age given as a guide									
	Up to 10 kg (group 0) Up to around 6 months		Up to 10 kg (group 0) Up to 13 kg (group 0+) Up to around 1 year			9 to 18 kg (group 1) Approx 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	Shell		"Rearwards-facing"			"Rearwards-facing"		"Forwards-facing"		
ISOFIX size class	F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats can be installed on:	X		IL-SU			IL-SU		IUF/IL-SU		
- Front passenger seat										
- Lateral rear seats			IL-SU*		IL-SU			IL-SU		IUF/IL-SU
- Central rear seat	Non ISOFIX seat									

IUF: Seat position suitable for installation of an Isofix **U**niversal "**F**orwards-facing" seat attached using the top tether.

IL-SU: Seat position suitable for installation of an ISOFIX **S**emi-**U**niversal child seat, either:

- "rearwards-facing" fitted with an upper strap or a support,
- "forwards-facing" fitted with a support,
- a shell fitted with an upper strap or a support.

To attach the upper strap, refer to the "ISOFIX mountings" paragraph.

X: Seat not suitable for installation of an ISOFIX seat of the size class indicated

* The ISOFIX shell, fixed to the lower rings of an ISOFIX seat, occupies two rear seats.

ELECTRIC CHILD LOCK

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls and use of the rear electric windows.



The control is located on the driver's door, with the electric window controls.

Activation

☞ Press button **A**.

The indicator light on button **A** comes on, accompanied by a message on the instrument panel display.

Deactivation

☞ Press button **A** again.

The indicator light on button **A** switches off, accompanied by a message on the instrument panel display.

This indicator light remains off until the child lock is activated.

Any other status of the indicator light indicates a malfunction of the electric child lock. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer.

This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.

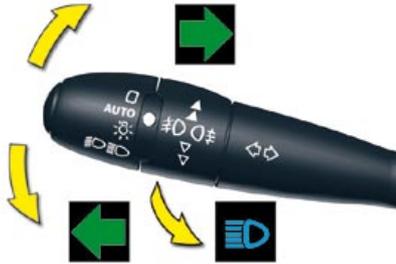
Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is deactivated automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

DIRECTION INDICATORS

Selection of the left or right direction indicators to signal a change of direction of the vehicle.



- ☞ Lower the lights stalk fully when moving to the left.
- ☞ Raise the lights stalk fully when moving to the right.

HAZARD WARNING LIGHTS

A visual warning by means of the direction indicators to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.



- ☞ Press button **A**, the direction indicators flash. They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic lighting of hazard warning lights

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lights come on.

They will switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

- ☞ If they do not, press button **A** to switch the direction indicators off.

As a safety precaution in a traffic jam, switch on the hazard warning lights if you are the last in the queue.

HORN

Audible warning to alert other road users to an imminent danger.



- ☞ Press the left or right-hand part of the fixed centred controls steering wheel.

Use the horn moderately and only in the following cases:

- immediate danger,
- when approaching an area
- where there is no visibility.

"Motorway" function

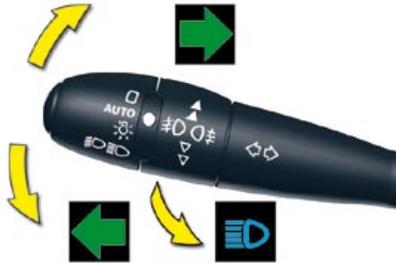
System for indicating a change of lane on a motorway.

- ☞ Move the stalk briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the resistance point; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

This function can be used at any speed, but it is particularly useful when changing lane on high-speed roads.

DIRECTION INDICATORS

Selection of the left or right direction indicators to signal a change of direction of the vehicle.



- ☞ Lower the lights stalk fully when moving to the left.
- ☞ Raise the lights stalk fully when moving to the right.

"Motorway" function

System for indicating a change of lane on a motorway.

- ☞ Move the stalk briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the resistance point; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

This function can be used at any speed, but it is particularly useful when changing lane on high-speed roads.

HAZARD WARNING LIGHTS

A visual warning by means of the direction indicators to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.



- ☞ Press button **A**, the direction indicators flash. They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic lighting of hazard warning lights

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lights come on.

They will switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

- ☞ If they do not, press button **A** to switch the direction indicators off.

As a safety precaution in a traffic jam, switch on the hazard warning lights if you are the last in the queue.

HORN

Audible warning to alert other road users to an imminent danger.



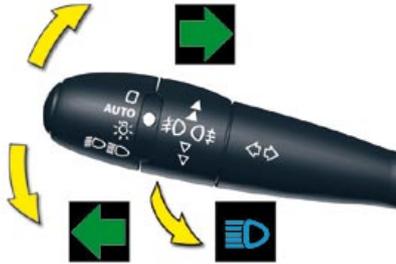
- ☞ Press the left or right-hand part of the fixed centred controls steering wheel.

Use the horn moderately and only in the following cases:

- immediate danger,
- when approaching an area
- where there is no visibility.

DIRECTION INDICATORS

Selection of the left or right direction indicators to signal a change of direction of the vehicle.



- ☞ Lower the lights stalk fully when moving to the left.
- ☞ Raise the lights stalk fully when moving to the right.

"Motorway" function

System for indicating a change of lane on a motorway.

- ☞ Move the stalk briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the resistance point; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

This function can be used at any speed, but it is particularly useful when changing lane on high-speed roads.

HAZARD WARNING LIGHTS

A visual warning by means of the direction indicators to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.



- ☞ Press button **A**, the direction indicators flash. They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic lighting of hazard warning lights

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lights come on.

They will switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

- ☞ If they do not, press button **A** to switch the direction indicators off.

As a safety precaution in a traffic jam, switch on the hazard warning lights if you are the last in the queue.

HORN

Audible warning to alert other road users to an imminent danger.



- ☞ Press the left or right-hand part of the fixed centred controls steering wheel.

Use the horn moderately and only in the following cases:

- immediate danger,
- when approaching an area
- where there is no visibility.

DEFLATION DETECTION

System which automatically checks the pressure of the tyres while driving.

Choice of detection

This function warns you of tyres that are deflated or punctured.

Automatic detection

Sensors monitor the tyre pressures. In the event of an anomaly, a message will appear on the instrument panel screen.

Driver request detection

You can check the tyre pressures at any given moment.

- Press on button **A** (CHECK); the information will be displayed on the instrument panel screen.

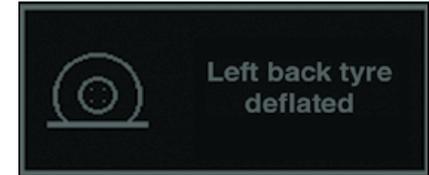


Display of tyres in good condition



- Press on button **A** (CHECK). The system indicates to you that the tyres are correctly inflated. This information is only available on the request of the driver.

Deflated tyre



automatic detection



detection on request

Automatic detection:

A message indicates to you which tyre is deflated.

Driver request detection:

The vehicle outline indicates the deflated tyre(s).

The message is accompanied by the **SERVICE** warning lamp lighting up and a beep.

- Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible.

Punctured tyre

automatic detection



detection on request

Automatic detection:

A message indicates to you which tyre is punctured.

Driver request detection:

The vehicle outline indicates the punctured tyre(s).

The message is accompanied by the **STOP** warning lamp lighting up and a beep.

Wheel not detected

automatic detection



detection on request

Automatic detection:

A message indicates to you which wheel is not detected.

Driver request detection:

The vehicle outline indicates the wheel(s) which is/are not detected.

- ☞ The message is accompanied by the **SERVICE** warning lamp lighting up and an audible beep. Consult a CITROËN dealer.
- ☞ If you have fitted wheels that are not equipped with tyre deflation detection (wheels with snow tyres, etc.), contact a CITROËN dealer.

The deflation detection system is a driving aid, but which does not absolve the driver from the need to be vigilant and responsible.

This system does not dispense with the requirement to check the tyres on a regular basis (see "Vehicle identification"), to make sure that the vehicle is behaving correctly and to avoid premature tyre wear arising from driving too fast etc.

Do not forget to check the pressure in the spare wheel.

Any repair or replacement of a tyre on a wheel that is equipped with a sensor must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer.

The system may suffer from temporary interference caused by radio transmissions on neighbouring frequencies.

BRAKING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS

Group of supplementary systems which help you to obtain optimum braking in complete safety in emergency situations:

- the anti-lock braking system (ABS),
- the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- the emergency braking assistance (EBA).

Anti-lock braking system and electronic brake force distribution

Linked systems which improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking, in particular on poor or slippery surfaces.

Activation

The anti-lock braking system comes into operation automatically when there is a risk of wheel lock.

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibration of the brake pedal.

When braking in an emergency, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.

Operating fault



If this warning light comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the instrument panel display, it indicates a malfunction of the anti-lock braking system which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.



If this warning light comes on, together with the **STOP** and **ABS** warning lights, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the instrument panel display, it indicates a malfunction of the electronic brake force distribution which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

You MUST stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

In both cases, contact a CITROËN dealer.

When replacing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that they conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Emergency braking assistance

System which, in an emergency, enables you to obtain the optimum braking pressure more quickly, thus reducing the stopping distance.

Activation

It is triggered by the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed.

The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

When braking in an emergency, press firmly without releasing the pressure.

TRAJECTORY CONTROL SYSTEMS

Anti-skid regulation (ASR) and electronic stability programme (ESP)

The anti-skid regulation optimises traction to prevent skidding of the wheels, by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine.

The electronic stability programme acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to keep the vehicle on the trajectory required by the driver.

Snow driving assistance (SNOW MOTION)

Your vehicle has a system to help driving on snow: **SNOW MOTION**.

This automatic system continuously checks for situations of difficult surface adhesion that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.

In these situations, the **SNOW MOTION** system takes over from the **ASR** system by optimising the amount of wheel slip to provide the best traction and trajectory control, even without snow tyres and with or without chains.

For vehicles with Hydractive III+ suspension, manual adjustment of ground clearance to the intermediate position improves further the ability to make progress in deep snow (see the relevant paragraph).

In extremely severe conditions (snow on top of ice, sand, deep mud...), it can be useful to deactivate the **ESP/ASR** systems to allow a degree of wheel spin and so recover grip.

Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.

They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.



This is indicated by flashing of this warning light on the instrument panel.

Disarming

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground...), it may be advisable to disarm the ASR and ESP systems, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.



Press the **"ESP OFF"** button, located in the centre of the fascia.



If this warning light comes on the instrument panel and the indicator light on the button comes on, this indicates that the ASR and ESP systems are disarmed.

Reactivation

These systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).

- ☞ Press the **"ESP OFF"** button again to reactivate them manually.

Operating fault



If this warning light comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction display, this indicates a malfunction of these systems.

Have the systems checked by a CITROËN dealer.

The ESP/ASR systems offer exceptional safety in normal driving, but this should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

The correct functioning of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding the wheels (tyres and rims), the braking components, the electronic components and the CITROËN assembly and operation procedures.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer.

SEAT BELTS



Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning system and force limiter.

This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front impact.

Depending on the seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belt against the body of the occupant.

The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt against the chest of the occupant, so increasing his protection.

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the belt down in front of you in a steady movement, making sure that it does not become twisted.
- ☞ Press the fastening into its buckle.
- ☞ Check that it is properly secured and that the automatic locking mechanism operates correctly by pulling sharply on the belt strap.
- ☞ The abdominal part of the strap should be positioned as low down as possible in the lap and as tight as possible.
- ☞ The chest part should be positioned if possible in the channel of the shoulder.

Each belt has a reel that adjusts its length automatically to the girth of the seat occupant.

Reactivation

These systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).

- ☞ Press the **"ESP OFF"** button again to reactivate them manually.

Operating fault



If this warning light comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction display, this indicates a malfunction of these systems.

Have the systems checked by a CITROËN dealer.

The ESP/ASR systems offer exceptional safety in normal driving, but this should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

The correct functioning of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding the wheels (tyres and rims), the braking components, the electronic components and the CITROËN assembly and operation procedures.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer.

SEAT BELTS



Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning system and force limiter.

This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front impact.

Depending on the seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belt against the body of the occupant.

The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt against the chest of the occupant, so increasing his protection.

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the belt down in front of you in a steady movement, making sure that it does not become twisted.
- ☞ Press the fastening into its buckle.
- ☞ Check that it is properly secured and that the automatic locking mechanism operates correctly by pulling sharply on the belt strap.
- ☞ The abdominal part of the strap should be positioned as low down as possible in the lap and as tight as possible.
- ☞ The chest part should be positioned if possible in the channel of the shoulder.

Each belt has a reel that adjusts its length automatically to the girth of the seat occupant.

Height adjustment



The correct positioning of the seat belt reel is around mid-shoulder level.

- ☞ To adjust the belt, pinch the control and slide it in the direction required.

Rear seat belts

Each rear seat is fitted with a three-point inertia reel seat belt with force limiter.

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.

Unfastening

- ☞ To unfasten the belt, press on the red button in the buckle.

The belt retracts automatically when not in use.

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all restrained securely before setting off.

Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not invert the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stored automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is rolled up correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling rapidly on the strap and releasing it.

In order to be effective, a seat belt:

- must be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- must restrain one person of adult size only,
- must not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- must be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- must not be transformed or modified to avoid altering its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, all repairs and checks must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer who guarantees that the work is carried out correctly.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer and particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and rolled up correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one metre fifty.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impacts, the pre-tensioning device may be triggered before and independently of the air bags. Triggering of the pre-tensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the air bag warning light comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer.

AIR BAGS

System designed to maximise the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. It supplements the action of the force-limiting seat belts.

If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the air bags are triggered instantly and protect the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the air bags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the air bags will not be triggered; the seat belt alone is sufficient to provide optimum protection in these situations.

The air bags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only operate once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the air bag will not operate.

Impact detection zones



- A. Front impact zone.
- B. Side impact zone.

Triggering of the air bag(s) is accompanied by a slight emission of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

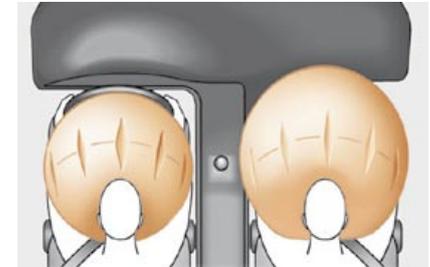
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.

The noise of the detonation may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front air bags

System which protects the head and chest of the driver and front passenger in the event of a front impact.

The driver's air bag is incorporated in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's air bag is incorporated in the fascia above the glove box.



Activation

The air bags are triggered simultaneously, unless the passenger's front air bag is disarmed, in the event of a serious front impact applied to all or part of the front impact zone A, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front air bag inflates between the front occupant of the vehicle and the fascia to cushion his forward movement.

Deactivation



Only the front passenger's air bag can be disarmed:

- ☞ **with the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger air bag disarming switch 1,
- ☞ turn it to the **"OFF"** position,
- ☞ then, remove the key keeping the switch in this position.



This warning light comes on on the roof console display when the ignition is on and until the air bag is re-armed.

To guarantee the safety of your child, it is imperative that the passenger air bag is disarmed when you install a "rearwards-facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the air bag were triggered.

Activation

When you remove the child seat, turn switch 1 to the **"ON"** position to re-arm the air bag and so guarantee the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

Operating fault



If this symbol appears on the instrument panel display, accompanied by an audible warning and a message, contact a CITROËN dealer to have the system checked. The air bags may no longer be triggered in the event of a serious impact.



If this warning light flashes, contact a CITROËN dealer.

If both air bag warning lights come on continuously, do not install a "rearwards-facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer.

For the air bags to be fully effective, observe the following safety rules:

Sit in a normal upright position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the air bags (a child, pet, object...). This could hamper the operation of the air bags or injure the occupants.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the air bag systems checked.

All work on the air bag system is strictly forbidden unless it is carried out by qualified personnel of the CITROËN network.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an air bag is triggered cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front air bags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the fascia.

Smoke as little as possible as deployment of the air bags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Side air bags

Put approved covers only on the seats. These will not hinder inflation of the side air bags. Consult a CITROËN dealer.

Do not fix or glue anything to the seat backs. This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the side air bag is triggered.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

Curtain air bags

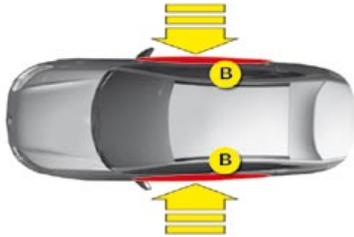
Do not fix or glue anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain air bag is triggered.

Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain air bags.

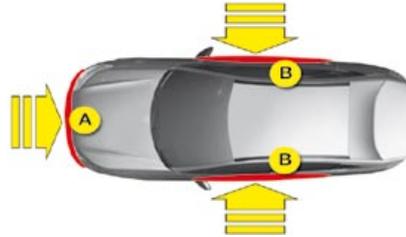
Side air bags*

System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest.

Each side air bag is incorporated in the front seat back frame, on the door side.



Impact detection zones



- A. Front impact zone.
- B. Side impact zone.

Curtain air bags*

System which protects the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of head injuries.

Each curtain air bag is incorporated in the pillars and the upper part of the passenger compartment.

Activation

It is triggered at the same time as the corresponding side air bag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain air bag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the air bag may not be triggered.

The air bag is not triggered in the event of a rear or front collision.

8

Activation

It is triggered unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The side air bag inflates between the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim pad.

Operating fault



If this symbol appears on the instrument panel display, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, contact a CITROËN dealer to have the system checked. The air bags may no longer be triggered in the event of a serious impact.

* According to country.

* According to country.

For the air bags to be fully effective, observe the following safety rules:

Sit in a normal upright position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the air bags (a child, pet, object...). This could hamper the operation of the air bags or injure the occupants.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the air bag systems checked.

All work on the air bag system is strictly forbidden unless it is carried out by qualified personnel of the CITROËN network.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an air bag is triggered cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front air bags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the fascia.

Smoke as little as possible as deployment of the air bags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Side air bags

Put approved covers only on the seats. These will not hinder inflation of the side air bags. Consult a CITROËN dealer.

Do not fix or glue anything to the seat backs. This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the side air bag is triggered.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

Curtain air bags

Do not fix or glue anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain air bag is triggered.

Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain air bags.

MANUAL PARKING BRAKE



Mechanical device for immobilising the vehicle when stationary.

Application

☞ Pull the parking brake to immobilise your vehicle.

9

To facilitate the action on the lever, you are recommended to press the brake pedal at the same time.



In all circumstances, as a precautionary measure, engage first gear.

On steep gradients, turn the steering wheel towards the pavement.

Release

☞ Press on the end of the lever whilst pulling it then lower it fully.



This warning lamp comes on if the parking brake is engaged or not fully released.

If the parking brake is released, the lighting of this warning lamp along with the **STOP** warning lamp indicates an insufficient level of brake fluid or a malfunction of the braking distribution.

It is essential to stop the vehicle.

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

ELECTRONIC PARKING BRAKE



The electronic parking brake combines 2 operational modes:

- **AUTOMATIC**
Automatic application when the engine stops and automatic release on use of the accelerator (automatic operation by default),
- **MANUAL**
Permanent manual application/release of the parking brake is possible by pulling control **A** while pressing the brake pedal.

Automatic operation

Application with the engine off

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off.**

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

-  - the lighting of the warning lamp on control **A** and on the instrument panel,
- the display of a message "parking brake applied" on the instrument panel display.

An operation sound will confirm to you the application/release of your electronic parking brake.



Before leaving the vehicle, check that warning lamp **P** on the instrument panel is permanently lit.

Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

Application with the engine running

With the engine running and the vehicle stationary, in order to immobilise the vehicle you need to manually apply the parking brake by **pulling** on control **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

-  - the lighting of warning lamp **P** on control **A** and on the instrument panel,
- the display of a message "parking brake applied" on the instrument panel display.

When the driver's door is opened, a beep is heard and a message displayed if the parking brake has not been applied.



Before leaving the vehicle, check that warning lamp **P** on the instrument panel is permanently lit.

Release

The electronic parking brake **releases automatically and progressively** when you press the accelerator:

- ☞ with a **manual gearbox** (first gear or reverse gear engaged), press down fully on the clutch pedal then press on the accelerator pedal and move off.
- ☞ with an **automatic gearbox**, accelerate with the selector in position **D**, **M** or **R**.

Full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the extinction of warning lamp **P** on control **A** and on the instrument panel,
- the display of a message "parking brake released" on the instrument panel display.

When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily (particularly when starting the engine, including in neutral), as you may release the parking brake.

Activation/Deactivation of the automatic functions

The automatic application when the engine is switched off and the automatic release when you press the accelerator can be deactivated. Activation/deactivation is performed using the configuration menu of the instrument panel display. To do so, select "Personalisation/Configuration/Define the Vehicle parameters/Driving assistance/Automatic handbrake".



The deactivation of these functions is confirmed by the lighting of this warning lamp on the instrument panel.

With the automatic functions deactivated, the application and release of the parking brake are done manually.



The deactivation of the automatic functions is recommended in particularly cold conditions (ice) and during towing (breakdown, caravan...).

Manual operation

Manual application/release of the parking brake is always possible.



Application

With the vehicle stationary, to apply the parking brake whether the engine is running or off, **pull** on control **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the lighting of the warning lamp on control **A** and of warning lamp **P** on the instrument panel,
- the display of a message "parking brake applied" on the instrument panel display.



When the driver's door is opened with the engine running, a beep is heard and a message displayed if the parking brake has not been applied.

Release

The electronic parking brake **releases automatically and progressively** when you press the accelerator:

- ☞ with a **manual gearbox** (first gear or reverse gear engaged), press down fully on the clutch pedal then press on the accelerator pedal and move off.
- ☞ with an **automatic gearbox**, accelerate with the selector in position **D**, **M** or **R**.

Full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the extinction of warning lamp **P** on control **A** and on the instrument panel,
- the display of a message "parking brake released" on the instrument panel display.

When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily (particularly when starting the engine, including in neutral), as you may release the parking brake.

Activation/Deactivation of the automatic functions

The automatic application when the engine is switched off and the automatic release when you press the accelerator can be deactivated. Activation/deactivation is performed using the configuration menu of the instrument panel display. To do so, select "Personalisation/Configuration/Define the Vehicle parameters/Driving assistance/Automatic handbrake".



The deactivation of these functions is confirmed by the lighting of this warning lamp on the instrument panel.

With the automatic functions deactivated, the application and release of the parking brake are done manually.



The deactivation of the automatic functions is recommended in particularly cold conditions (ice) and during towing (breakdown, caravan...).

Manual operation

Manual application/release of the parking brake is always possible.



Application

With the vehicle stationary, to apply the parking brake whether the engine is running or off, **pull** on control **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the lighting of the warning lamp on control **A** and of warning lamp **P** on the instrument panel,
- the display of a message "parking brake applied" on the instrument panel display.



When the driver's door is opened with the engine running, a beep is heard and a message displayed if the parking brake has not been applied.

Release

With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake, press on the brake pedal, **push then release** control **A**.

The full application of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- the extinction of the warning lamp on control **A** and of warning lamp **P** on the instrument panel,
- the display of a message "parking brake released" on the instrument panel display.

If you push control **A** without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and the message "Foot on brake necessary" will be displayed on the instrument panel.



When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, as you may release the parking brake.

Maximum application

If necessary, you can utilise **maximum application** of the parking brake. It is obtained by means of a **long pull** on control **A**, until you see the message "Max application of the parking brake" and a beep is heard.

Maximum application is essential:

- in the case of a vehicle towing a caravan or a trailer, if the automatic functions are activated but you are applying the parking brake manually,
- when the gradient you are parked on is variable in its effect (e.g. on a ferry, in a lorry, during towing).
- In the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.
- After a maximum application, the release time will be longer.

Particular situations

In certain situations (starting the engine...), the parking brake can automatically alter its force. This is normal operation.

To advance your vehicle a few centimetres without starting the engine, but with the ignition on, press on the brake pedal and release the parking brake **by pushing then releasing** control **A**.

The full release of the parking brake is confirmed by the extinction of warning lamp **P** (red) on the instrument panel and the display of a message "parking brake released" on the instrument panel display.

If the parking brake malfunctions **while applied or if the battery runs flat**, an emergency release is always possible.

To guarantee correct operation of the parking brake and therefore your safety, the number of successive application/release operations is limited to eight.

If this number is exceeded, you are warned by the message "Parking brake faulty" and a warning lamp flashes.

Dynamic emergency braking



In the event of a failure of the vehicle's main braking system or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc) pull and hold control **A** to stop the vehicle.

The electronic stability programme (ESP) provides stability during dynamic emergency braking.

If the dynamic emergency braking malfunctions, one of the following messages will be displayed on the instrument panel display:

- "Parking brake faulty".
- "Parking brake control faulty".



If a failure of the ESP system is signalled by the lighting of this warning lamp, then braking stability is not guaranteed. In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull release" actions on control **A**.



The dynamic emergency braking must only be used in exceptional circumstances.

Emergency unlocking



In the event of the electronic parking brake malfunctioning or the battery running flat, an emergency manual device can unlock the parking brake.

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle, with the engine running, by engaging first gear (manual gearbox) or position **P** (automatic gearbox), then switch off the engine.

If it is impossible to immobilise the vehicle, do not action the control and urgently contact a CITROËN dealer.



- ☞ Fetch the vehicle chock located in the boot.
- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle by placing the chock at the front or at the rear of one of the rear wheels.
- ☞ Open the lower compartment of the centre armrest by pulling it.
- ☞ Ensure that the cup holder **B** is retracted.
- ☞ Remove the rubber mat covering the base of the armrest.



- ☞ Release the strap from its location **C**.
- ☞ Pull the strap to release the brake. A loud knock confirms the release of the brake.
- ☞ Take care to put the strap back in its location **C** correctly. Otherwise, it will no longer be possible to apply the brake. Consult a CITROËN dealer.
- ☞ Put the rubber mat back in place on the base of the armrest.
- ☞ Remove and stow the chock.



This strap does not permit application of the parking brake.

To re-engage the electronic parking brake (after rectifying the malfunction or battery failure), give a long pull on the control **A** until the parking brake warning lamp (!) flashes on the instrument panel then give a second long pull until this warning lamp is lit permanently.

The time required for the subsequent application may be longer than during normal operation.

It is essential that the ignition is not switched on until the parking brake has re-engaged (flashing of the warning lamp (!) on the instrument panel then warning lamp lit permanently) to avoid damage to the parking brake.

Take care not to allow moisture or dust in the proximity of the diagnostic socket **D** which is essential for the maintenance of your vehicle.

Operating anomalies



If any of these instances arises, contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

	SITUATION	CONSEQUENCES
1	<p>Electronic parking brake fault and display of message "Parking brake faulty" and the following warning lamps:</p>  	<p>If the electronic parking brake fault warning lamp and the service warning lamp light up, position the vehicle in a safe location (on flat ground, with a gear engaged).</p>
2	<p>Display of the messages "Parking brake faulty" and "Anti roll-back fault" and of the following warning lamps:</p>  	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The automatic functions are deactivated. - The hill start assist is unavailable. - The electronic parking brake is only available manually.
3	<p>Display of messages "Parking brake faulty" and "Anti roll-back fault" and of the following warning lamp:</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The manual unlocking of the electronic parking brake is unavailable. - The hill start assist is unavailable. - The automatic functions and manual application are still available.

	SITUATION	CONSEQUENCES
4	<p>Display of messages "Parking brake faulty" and "Anti roll-back fault" and of the following warning lamps:</p>  	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The automatic functions are deactivated. - The hill start assist is unavailable. <p>To apply the electronic parking brake:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☞ Immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition ☞ Pull the control lever for at least 5 seconds or until maximum application. ☞ Switch on the ignition and check that the electronic parking brake warning lamps are on. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Application may take longer than in normal operation. - If warning lamp (!) flashes or if the warning lamps do not come on when the ignition is switched on, this method does not work. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer. <p>To release the electronic parking brake:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☞ Switch on the ignition. ☞ Push the control lever and hold it for approximately 3 seconds.
5	<p>Display of message "Parking brake control faulty – automatic mode activated" and the following warning lamps:</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Only the functions for automatic application on switching off the engine and automatic release on acceleration are available. - Manual application/release of the electronic parking brake and dynamic emergency braking are unavailable.
6	<p>Display of message "Parking brake faulty" and of the following warning lamp:</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Application of the parking brake is not guaranteed. - The parking brake is temporarily unavailable. <p>It this situation arises:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☞ Wait approximately 3 minutes. ☞ After 3 minutes, if the warning lamp is still flashing, try to reinitialise the parking brake, either by pushing and releasing the control A while pressing the brake pedal or by means of a long pull on control A.
7	<p>Battery fault</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Lighting of the battery warning lamp makes it essential to stop the vehicle as soon as traffic allows. Stop and immobilise your vehicle. - Apply the electronic parking brake before switching off the engine.

HILL START ASSIST

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This function is only active when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- in particular conditions on a slope,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated.

Operation



On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal:

- provided you are in first gear or neutral on a manual gearbox,
- provided you are in **D** or **M** on an automatic gearbox.



On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal.



Do not exit the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase.

If you need to exit the vehicle with the engine running, manually apply the parking brake and ensure that the parking brake warning lamp (on the instrument panel) and the warning lamp **P** (on the control lever **A**) are permanently on.

5-SPEED MANUAL GEARBOX



Starting the vehicle

- ☞ Check that the gear lever is in neutral.
- ☞ Do not touch the accelerator.
- ☞ For Diesel engines: turn the key to position **M** and wait until the pre-heating warning light switches off if it has come on.
- ☞ Operate the starter, turning the key until the engine starts (no more than ten seconds).
- ☞ In temperatures lower than 0 °C, declutch whilst turning the starter to facilitate starting.

Engaging reverse gear

- ☞ Push the gear lever to the right then rearwards.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

6-SPEED MANUAL GEARBOX



Engaging reverse gear

- ☞ Raise the ring under the knob and push the gear lever to the left then forwards.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:

- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

AUTOMATIC GEARBOX



Automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by the sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.

Therefore, you have a choice of four driving modes:

- **automatic** operation for electronic control of the gears by the gearbox,
- the **SPORT** programme for a more dynamic driving style,
- the **SNOW** programme to improve driving when the grip is poor,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

5-SPEED MANUAL GEARBOX



Starting the vehicle

- ☞ Check that the gear lever is in neutral.
- ☞ Do not touch the accelerator.
- ☞ For Diesel engines: turn the key to position **M** and wait until the pre-heating warning light switches off if it has come on.
- ☞ Operate the starter, turning the key until the engine starts (no more than ten seconds).
- ☞ In temperatures lower than 0 °C, declutch whilst turning the starter to facilitate starting.

Engaging reverse gear

- ☞ Push the gear lever to the right then rearwards.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

6-SPEED MANUAL GEARBOX



Engaging reverse gear

- ☞ Raise the ring under the knob and push the gear lever to the left then forwards.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:

- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

AUTOMATIC GEARBOX



Automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by the sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.

Therefore, you have a choice of four driving modes:

- **automatic** operation for electronic control of the gears by the gearbox,
- the **SPORT** programme for a more dynamic driving style,
- the **SNOW** programme to improve driving when the grip is poor,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

5-SPEED MANUAL GEARBOX



Starting the vehicle

- ☞ Check that the gear lever is in neutral.
- ☞ Do not touch the accelerator.
- ☞ For Diesel engines: turn the key to position **M** and wait until the pre-heating warning light switches off if it has come on.
- ☞ Operate the starter, turning the key until the engine starts (no more than ten seconds).
- ☞ In temperatures lower than 0 °C, declutch whilst turning the starter to facilitate starting.

Engaging reverse gear

- ☞ Push the gear lever to the right then rearwards.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

6-SPEED MANUAL GEARBOX



Engaging reverse gear

- ☞ Raise the ring under the knob and push the gear lever to the left then forwards.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:

- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

AUTOMATIC GEARBOX



Automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by the sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.

Therefore, you have a choice of four driving modes:

- **automatic** operation for electronic control of the gears by the gearbox,
- the **SPORT** programme for a more dynamic driving style,
- the **SNOW** programme to improve driving when the grip is poor,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Mode selection



- ☞ automatic mode: selector in position **D**,
- ☞ sequential mode: selector in position **M**,
- ☞ **SPORT** mode: selector in position **D** and button **A** pressed,
- ☞ **SNOW** mode: selector in position **D** and button **B** pressed.

Displays on the instrument panel



The position of the selector and the driving mode are displayed on the instrument panel dial **C**.

A position grille relating to the selector allows you to view the position that is selected.



For safety:

- position **P** can be disengaged only if you press the brake pedal,
- when a door is opened, a sound signal is heard if the selector is not in position **P**,
- always make sure that the selector is in position **P** before you leave your vehicle.

If the gearbox is in position **P** but the position of the selector is different, reposition the selector on **P** so that you can start the vehicle.

Moving off

- ☞ To start the engine, the selector has to be in position **P** or **N**.
- ☞ Action the starter.
- ☞ When the engine is running, place the selector on **R**, **D** or **M** as required.
- ☞ Check, in the instrument panel, the position engaged.
- ☞ Release the brake pedal and accelerate.
- ☞ To avoid incoherence between the position of the selector and the actual position of the gearbox, always exit from position **P** when you switch on the ignition and press the brake pedal.

Otherwise, when the ignition is on or the engine is running:

- ☞ reposition the selector in position **P**,
- ☞ put your foot on the brake pedal and then select the gear you want.

Park

P

This position of the selector is used to prevent the vehicle from moving when you are stationary.

- ☞ To select position **P**, move the selector back to the highest position (towards **R**), then push it forwards and then to the left.
- ☞ To exit position **P**, move the selector to the right and then to the position you want.
- ☞ Only engage this position when the vehicle is completely stationary. In this position, the front wheels are locked. Make sure that the selector is correctly positioned.

Reverse gear

R

Only engage this position when the vehicle is stationary. To prevent snatching, do not accelerate too soon after selection.

Neutral

N

Never select position **N** if the vehicle is moving.



Never select positions **P** or **R** if the vehicle is not stationary.

If, while the vehicle is moving, position **N** is engaged inadvertently, allow the engine to idle before engaging position **D** or **M**.

Automatic operation



☞ Move the selector to position **D**.

The gearbox constantly selects the gear that is best suited to the following parameters:

- driving style,
- road profile
- vehicle load.

The gearbox operates without requiring any intervention on your part.

For certain manoeuvres (for example overtaking), you can obtain maximum acceleration by pressing the accelerator pedal hard down past the mechanical force zone (point of resistance), which then produces an automatic change down to a lower gear.

When braking, the gearbox may change down automatically in order to provide effective engine braking.

If you lift your foot off the accelerator abruptly, the gearbox will not engage a higher gear.

- If the vehicle stops or reduces speed (for example when approaching a stop sign), the gearbox changes down automatically to first gear.
- In sequential mode, it is not necessary to release the accelerator during gear changes.
- A request to change gear is accepted only if the engine speed permits it.
- The **SPORT** and **SNOW** modes do not operate in sequential mode.

Manual operation



Position of the selector for manual gear changing.

- ☞ Move the selector to position **M**.
- ☞ Push the selector towards the "+" sign to change up a gear.
- ☞ Pull the selector towards the "-" sign to change down a gear.

SPORT and SNOW programmes



These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very particular conditions of use.

SPORT programme "S"



☞ With the lever in position **D** and the engine running, press button **A**.

The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic driving style.

S appears on the instrument panel.

SNOW programme "❄"

☞ With the lever in position **D** and the engine running, press button **B**.

The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.

This programme makes moving off easier and improves traction in conditions of poor grip.



❄ appears on the instrument panel.

Return to automatic operation

☞ At any time, press the button selected again to exit from the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.



- a marked snatching may be felt when selecting **R** for reverse gear,
- if an operating fault occurs, the gearbox is locked in a gear, do not exceed a speed of 60 mph (approx. 100 km/h).
- do not switch off your engine if the gear selector is in position **D** or **R**.

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

FIXED CENTRED CONTROLS STEERING WHEEL



9



1	Rotation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Scrolling of the various pages of information on the instrument panel display. - Movement through the various menus on the instrument panel display. - Increasing/decreasing of the values.
	Short press	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Opening of the menu on the instrument panel display (only when stationary). - Selection and confirmation of the information.
	Long press	Trip computer zero reset (if the trip computer page is displayed).
2	Short press	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Cancellation of the current operation. - Return to the previous screen on the instrument panel display.
	Long press	Return to the initial screen on the instrument panel display.
3	Short press	Increasing of the speed in steps of 1 km/h (1 mph)/storing of the speed.
	Maintained press	Increasing of the speed in steps of 5 km/h (5 mph).
4	Short press	Decreasing of the speed in steps of 1 km/h (1 mph)/storing of the speed.
	Maintained press	Decreasing of the speed in steps 5 km/h (5 mph).
5	Short press	Suspension or resumption of the cruise control/speed limiter (depending on the mode selected).
6	Short press	Selection of the cruise control or speed limiter mode (the cycle on this button will always begin with selection of the speed limiter).
7	Short press	Deactivation of the cruise control/speed limiter.
8	Short press	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Pick up an incoming call. - Hang up the current call. - Opening of the telephone short-cut menu. - Confirmation on the list and the telephone menu.
	Long press	Refuse an incoming call.
9	Short press/Long press	Horn.
10	Short press	Activation/deactivation of the Black Panel mode (night driving).
11	Short press	Activation of the voice command.
	Long press	Navigation instruction repeat.



12	Rotation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Radio source: Scrolling of the pre-set stations. - CD/MP3 CD/CD changer/jukebox source: Scrolling of the CDs or directories. - On the multifunction display menus: Movement and increasing/decreasing.
	Short press	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - On the multifunction display menus: confirmation. - Opening of the short-cut menus (in accordance with the multifunction display page).
	Long press	Opening of the multifunction display main menu.
13	Short press	Cancellation of the current operation and return to the previous screen on the multifunction display. When an incoming telephone call is received: Refuse the call.
	Long press	Return to the initial screen on the multifunction display.
14	Short press	Access to the multifunction display general menu.
15	Short press/Maintained press	Volume increase.
16	Short press/Maintained press	Volume decrease.
17	Short press	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - First press: mute. - Second press: restoring of the sound.
	Short press	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Radio source: Automatic search of higher frequencies. - CD/MP3 CD/CD changer/jukebox source: Search for the next track.
18	Maintained press	- CD/MP3 CD/CD changer/jukebox source: Fast forward play.
	Short press	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Radio source: Automatic search of lower frequencies. - CD/MP3 CD/CD changer/jukebox source: Search for the previous track.
19	Maintained press	CD/MP3 CD/CD changer/jukebox source: Rewind.
	Short press	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Radio source: displaying of the list of radio stations available. - CD/MP3 CD and CD changer source: displaying of the list of CD tracks and directories. - Jukebox source: displaying of the list of albums.
20	Long press	Updating of the list of radio stations.
	Short press/Long press	Horn.
22	Short press	MODE: selection of the type of information presented on the multifunction display.

SPEED LIMITER

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

When the limit speed is reached, the accelerator pedal no longer has any effect.

The speed limiter is switched on manually: a speed of at least 20 mph (approx. 30 km/h) must be programmed.

The speed limiter can in no way replace respect for speed limits or vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

Steering wheel controls



The speed limiter switches are located on the left-hand side of the steering wheel.

Displays on the instrument panel



The speed limiter information is displayed in zone **A** of the instrument panel.

Successive presses will modify the cruise speed in steps of 1 mph and a continuous press in steps of 5 mph.

Programming

- Press on button **4** to select speed limiter mode **"LIMIT"**.

The selection is confirmed by the display of the function in zone **A** of the instrument panel.



When the function is selected, the last memorised speed and the information **"PAUSE"** are displayed.

With the engine running, you can adjust the memorised maximum speed, displayed in zone **A**, by pressing on:

- Button **1** to increase the memorised maximum speed.
- Button **2** to decrease the memorised maximum speed.

Activation



- Press on button **3** when the desired maximum speed is displayed.

The information **"ON"** then appears in zone **A**.



Suspension/Resumption

- ☞ Press on button **3**.

This action causes the information "PAUSE" to appear in zone **A** of the instrument panel.



This action does not cancel the memorised maximum speed which remains displayed in zone **A** of the instrument panel.



Overriding the programmed speed

The accelerator pedal has an end-of-travel switch. In order to exceed the memorised maximum speed at any time, you can press the pedal all the way down. While the speed is being exceeded, the speed displayed in zone **A** will flash. You have only to release the accelerator pedal to return below the maximum speed, to restore the function.

The speed will also flash if the speed limiter is not able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed (e.g. on a steep descent or under excessive acceleration).

To reactivate the speed limiter, release the accelerator to slow to a speed lower than the programmed speed.

Return to normal driving

- ☞ Press on button **5**.
- ☞ Select the speed limiter function.
- ☞ Or stop the engine.

Operating fault

If there is a malfunction, a message is displayed accompanied by a sound signal and lighting of the **SERVICE** warning lamp.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer.

In the event of a steep descent or under excessive acceleration, the speed limiter (which does not act on the brakes) may not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

Use of a floor mat other than that recommended by CITROËN may affect the normal operation of the accelerator pedal and hamper the operation of the speed limiter.

Floor mats approved by CITROËN are fitted with a 3rd fixing located in the pedal area to avoid any risk of interference with the pedals.

CRUISE CONTROL

System which automatically maintains the vehicle speed programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is switched on manually: the vehicle speed must be at least 25 mph (40 km/h) and you must engage at least:

- 4th gear for manual gearboxes,
- 2nd gear for automatic gearboxes.

Steering wheel switches



The cruise control switches are located on the left-hand side of the steering wheel.

Displays on the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together in zone **A** of the instrument panel.

Programming

- ☞ Press button **4** to select cruise control mode "**CRUISE**".



The selection is confirmed by the display of the function in zone **A** of the instrument panel.

When the function is selected, **no cruising speed has yet been memorised.**

Once the desired speed has been reached using the accelerator, press button **1** or button **2**. The cruising speed is then memorised and cruise control is activated. The cruising speed is displayed in zone **A** of the instrument panel, and "**ON**" is displayed.



You can then release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will automatically keep to the speed chosen.

The vehicle speed may vary slightly from that memorised.

If during cruise control the system cannot keep to the cruise speed (e.g. on a steep descent), then the speed flashes. If necessary, brake to curb your speed.

Adjustment of the memorised speed while cruise control is in operation

You can adjust the memorised speed, displayed in zone **A**, by pressing:

- Button **1** to increase the speed.
- Button **2** to reduce the speed.

Successive presses will modify the cruise speed in steps of 1 mph and a continuous press in steps of 5 mph.

Overriding the programmed speed

While cruise control is in operation, it is always possible to go above the programmed speed simply by pressing the accelerator pedal (for example to overtake another vehicle).

The speed displayed in zone **A** flashes.

You only have to release the accelerator pedal to return to the programmed speed.

Suspension/Resumption

- ☞ Either by pressing the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.
- ☞ Or by pressing button **3**.
- ☞ Or by the ESP or ASR systems being active.

For vehicles with a manual gearbox, cruise control is deactivated if the gear lever is in neutral.



"PAUSE" will be displayed in zone **A** of the instrument panel.

These actions do not cancel the cruising speed which remains displayed on the instrument panel.

Reactivation

- **By recalling the memorised speed**

After deactivation, press button **3**. Your vehicle automatically returns to the memorised cruising speed. The memorised speed and "ON" are displayed in zone **A**.

If the memorised cruising speed is higher than the current speed, the vehicle will accelerate strongly to reach the current speed.

- **By selecting the current speed**

Press button **1** or **2** once the desired speed has been reached.

The new speed and "ON" will appear in zone **A**.

Return to normal driving

- ☞ Press on button **5**.
- ☞ Select the cruise control function.
- ☞ Or stop the engine.

The speed that was chosen is no longer memorised.

Operating fault

If there is a malfunction, a message is displayed accompanied by a sound signal and lighting of the **SERVICE** warning lamp.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer.



Cruise control must only be used where the traffic conditions permit driving at a constant speed.

Do not use it on congested roads or when the weather or the road conditions are poor.

The driver still has to remain attentive and in complete control of his vehicle.

You are recommended to keep your feet within range of the pedals.

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING SYSTEM

System which detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground (continuous or discontinuous line).

Sensors, fitted below the front bumper, trigger a warning if the vehicle drifts (speed higher than 50 mph (80 km/h)).



This system operates to its full potential above all when used on motorways and main roads.

The lane departure warning system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

Activation

☞ Press button **A**, the indicator light comes on.

Deactivation

☞ Press button **A** again, the indicator light switches off.

The status of the system remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

Detection

You are warned by the vibration of the driver's seat cushion:

- on the right-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the right,
- on the left-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the left.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is active and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

A warning may be transmitted if a direction marking (e.g. arrow) or non-standard marking (e.g. graffiti) is crossed.

Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction, the service warning light comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction display. Consult a CITROËN dealer.

The detection may be disrupted:

- if the sensors are dirty (mud, snow...),
- if the markings on the ground are worn,
- if there is little contrast between the markings on the ground and the road surface.

PARKING SPACE SENSOR



System which measures the parking space available between two vehicles or obstacles. It measures the size of the space and gives you information on:

- the possibility of fitting into a free space, depending on the dimensions of your vehicle and the distances necessary for your manoeuvring,
- the level of difficulty of the manoeuvre to be performed.

The system does not measure spaces which are clearly much smaller or larger than the size of the vehicle.

Displays on the instrument panel

The parking space sensor function warning lamp can have three different statuses:

- **off:** the function is not selected,
- **on fixed:** the function is selected but the conditions for measuring are not yet met (direction indicator not operating, speed too high) or the measuring phase is terminated.
- **flashing:** the measuring is in progress or the message is being displayed.



You can select the "parking space sensor" function by pressing button **A**. The fixed lighting of the warning lamp indicates that the function is selected.

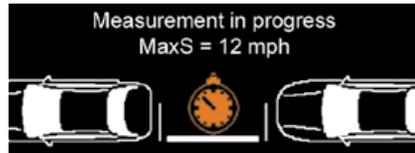
During the measurement, the message "Measurement in progress - Vmax 20 km/h (12 mph)" is displayed on the instrument panel screen.

Operation

You have identified a parking space:

- ☞ Press button **A** to select the function.
- ☞ Activate the direction indicator on the side where the space is to be measured.
- ☞ During the measuring, go forward the length of the space, at a speed less than 12 mph (approx. 20 km/h), to prepare for your manoeuvre.

The system then measures the size of the space.



- ☞ The system informs you of the level of difficulty of the manoeuvre via a message on the instrument panel display accompanied by a gong.
- ☞ Depending on the message issued by the system, you may or may not be able to perform the manoeuvre.

The function displays the following types of message:



The function deselects itself automatically:

- when you engage reverse gear,
- when you switch off the ignition,
- if measuring is not requested,
- within five minutes of selection of the function,
- if the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold of 45 mph (approx. 70 km/h) for one minute.

If the lateral distance between your vehicle and the parking space is too large, the system may not be able to measure the space.

The function remains available after each measurement and thus can measure more than one space during your search.

In bad weather conditions or in winter, make sure that the sensors are not covered by dirt, or by ice or snow.

The parking space sensor function deactivates the front parking assistance during the space measuring phase when you are in forward gear.

If there is a malfunction, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer.

VISUAL AND AUDIBLE FRONT AND/OR REAR PARKING ASSISTANCE

System consisting of proximity sensors, installed in the front and/or rear bumper.

It detects any obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, barrier...) located behind the vehicle, however, it will not be able to detect obstacles located immediately below the bumper.

An object, such as a stake, a road-works cone or any other similar object may be detected at the start of the manoeuvre but may no longer be detected when the vehicle moves nearer to it.



The parking assistance is **switched on**:

- by engaging reverse gear,
- at a speed below 6 mph (10 km/h) in forward gear.

This is accompanied by an audible signal and/or displaying of the vehicle on the multifunction display.

The proximity information is indicated by:

- an audible signal which becomes more rapid as the vehicle approaches the obstacle,
- a diagram on the multifunction display, with blocks which move closer to the vehicle.

The obstacle is located in relation to the emission of the audible signal by the speakers; front or rear and right or left.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than approximately twenty-five centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous and/or the "Danger" symbol appears, depending on the multifunction display version.

The parking assistance is **switched off**:

- when you exit reverse gear,
- when the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h) in forward gear,
- when the vehicle has been stationary for more than three seconds in forward gear.

The parking assistance system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

Deactivation

- ☞ Press button **A**, the warning light comes on, the system is fully deactivated.

The system will be deactivated automatically when a trailer is being towed or when a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by CITROËN).

Reactivation



Press button **A** again, the warning light switches off, the system is reactivated.

In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

"HYDRACTIVE III+" ELECTRONIC SUSPENSION



The suspension automatically and instantly adjusts to different driving styles and to the profile of the road, providing the best compromise between occupant comfort and vehicle road holding.

It allows you to alternate between soft and firm suspension settings, maximising comfort at the same time as permanently guaranteeing the highest level of safety. It also automatically corrects road holding, according to the vehicle load and driving conditions.

Also, the "Hydractive III+" suspension gives you the possibility of choosing between two modes of suspension.

A change of suspension mode can be made either when the vehicle is moving or when stationary, by pressing on button **A**.

Display on the instrument panel

The suspension mode selected is displayed on the instrument panel display.

Normal mode



This mode favours soft damping for maximum comfort. If the speed authorised for a particular position is exceeded, the vehicle reverts automatically to the normal road position.

SPORT mode



This mode favours dynamic driving.

The warning lamp on button **A** comes on in addition to the message on the instrument panel display.

SPORT mode is retained when you switch off the engine.

Reactivation



Press button **A** again, the warning light switches off, the system is reactivated.

In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

"HYDRACTIVE III+" ELECTRONIC SUSPENSION



The suspension automatically and instantly adjusts to different driving styles and to the profile of the road, providing the best compromise between occupant comfort and vehicle road holding.

It allows you to alternate between soft and firm suspension settings, maximising comfort at the same time as permanently guaranteeing the highest level of safety. It also automatically corrects road holding, according to the vehicle load and driving conditions.

Also, the "Hydractive III+" suspension gives you the possibility of choosing between two modes of suspension.

A change of suspension mode can be made either when the vehicle is moving or when stationary, by pressing on button **A**.

Display on the instrument panel

The suspension mode selected is displayed on the instrument panel display.

Normal mode



This mode favours soft damping for maximum comfort. If the speed authorised for a particular position is exceeded, the vehicle reverts automatically to the normal road position.

SPORT mode



This mode favours dynamic driving.

The warning lamp on button **A** comes on in addition to the message on the instrument panel display.

SPORT mode is retained when you switch off the engine.

Vehicle positions



Position changes may only be made when the engine is running.

Adjustable ground clearance responds to all types of situation. Apart from a few specific situations, driving in the normal road position is imperative.

☞ Press once on one of the adjustment controls.

The change in position is indicated by a message on the instrument panel display.



Maximum height

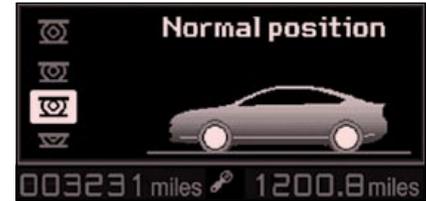
Changing a wheel (Not possible if speed > 6 mph (10 km/h)).



Intermediate position

For an increased ground clearance (Not possible if speed > 25 mph (40 km/h)).

For use on difficult roads when travelling at reduced speed, as well as on car park ramps.



Normal position

If the speed authorised for a particular position is exceeded, the vehicle reverts automatically to the normal position.



Minimum height

To facilitate loading or unloading the vehicle.

For workshop inspections.

Not to be used in normal driving (Not possible if speed > 6 mph (10 km/h)).

Position not authorised



The instrument panel display temporarily displays a message indicating that this position is not authorised.

The vehicle remains in the authorised position and the instrument panel display indicates this position to you.

Automatic variation of ground clearance

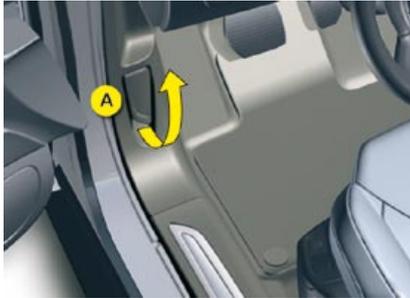
- If your speed exceeds 70 mph (approx. 110 km/h), on a good road surface, ground clearance is lowered. The vehicle returns to its normal position if the road surface deteriorates or if your speed is lower than 55 mph (approx. 90 km/h).
- At low or medium speed, if the road surface is poor, ground clearance is increased. The vehicle returns to its normal position as soon as conditions allow.
- On switching off the ignition, the ground clearance is reduced to the parking position

For your safety if you are operating underneath the vehicle, it is obligatory to support the vehicle with axle stands.

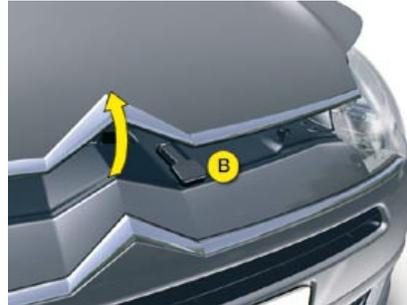
BONNET

Protects the components of the engine and provides access for checking levels.

Opening



- ☞ Open the driver's door.
- ☞ Pull the interior control **A**, located at the bottom of the door frame.



- ☞ Lift the lever **B** and raise the bonnet.



- ☞ Unclip the strut **C** from its housing and pivot it to insert it in the notch **D** indicated by a yellow arrow.
- ☞ Fix the strut in the notch to hold the bonnet open.

To avoid any risk of burns, only handle the bonnet strut by its yellow end.

The location of the interior control prevents opening of the bonnet while the driver's door is closed.

This operation must only be carried out when the vehicle is stationary. Avoid opening the bonnet in strong winds.

Closing

- ☞ Take the strut out of the support notch.
- ☞ Clip the strut in its housing.
- ☞ Lower the bonnet then slam it firmly at the end of its travel.
- ☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is secured correctly.

DRAINING THE DIESEL FUEL FILTER

Protective cover



Removal of the cover

HDi 138 engine

- ☞ Remove the protective cover by first unclipping at **3**, then **1** and **4**.
- ☞ Unclip at **2** by pulling towards you, then lift up.

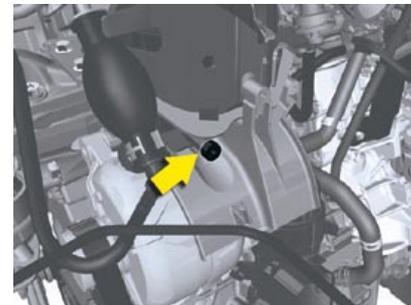
HDi 110, HDi 173 and V6 HDi 208 engines

- ☞ Pull the protective cover upwards to remove it.

Refitting

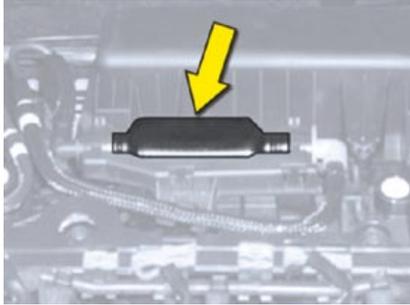
- ☞ Firstly clip in at **2**.
- ☞ Lower and centre the cover.
- ☞ Clip in at **3** and **4**, pushing vertically and gently from the rear.
- ☞ Clip in at **1** pushing vertically.

Draining water from the fuel filter



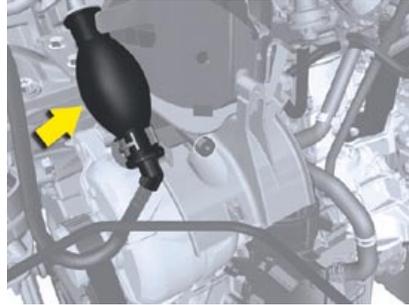
Drain regularly (at each oil change).
To drain the water, slacken the bleed screw or the water in diesel fuel sensor, located at the base of the filter. Continue until all the water has flowed out.
Then retighten the bleed screw or the water detection sensor.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL (DIESEL)



HDi 110 engine

- ☞ Unclip the protective cover to gain access to the priming pump.



HDi 138 and HDi 173 engines

- ☞ Unclip the protective cover to gain access to the priming pump.

Priming the fuel circuit

In the event of running out of fuel:

- ☞ after filling (minimum 5 litres) and removing the protective cover, action the manual priming pump, until some resistance is felt,
- ☞ operate the starter motor while depressing the accelerator pedal slightly until the engine starts.

If the engine fails to start at the first attempt, wait fifteen seconds before trying again.

If the engine fails to start after a few attempts, action the priming pump again and then try to start the engine.

When the engine is idling, accelerate slightly to complete the bleeding of the circuit.

V6 HDi 208 engine with electric pump

In the event of running out of fuel:

- ☞ after adding fuel, turn the ignition key to position **M**, wait for a few seconds,
- ☞ operate the starter motor until the engine starts.

If the engine fails to start after several attempts, contact a CITROËN dealer.

 HDi engines are the result of advanced technology.

Any intervention requires special qualifications which only a CITROËN dealer can guarantee.



1.8i 16V



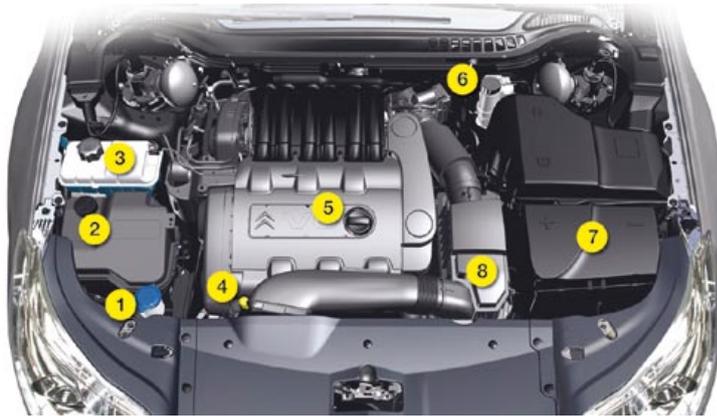
2.0i 16V

PETROL ENGINES

They allow you access for checking the level of the various fluids and for replacing certain components.

1. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
2. Power steering fluid reservoir or power steering and suspension fluid reservoir.
3. Coolant reservoir.
4. Dipstick.
5. Engine oil filler cap.
6. Brake fluid reservoir.
7. Battery.
8. Air filter.

 Vehicles fitted with the **2.0i 16V** engine may be fitted with metal suspension. In this case, a different power steering fluid reservoir is fitted.



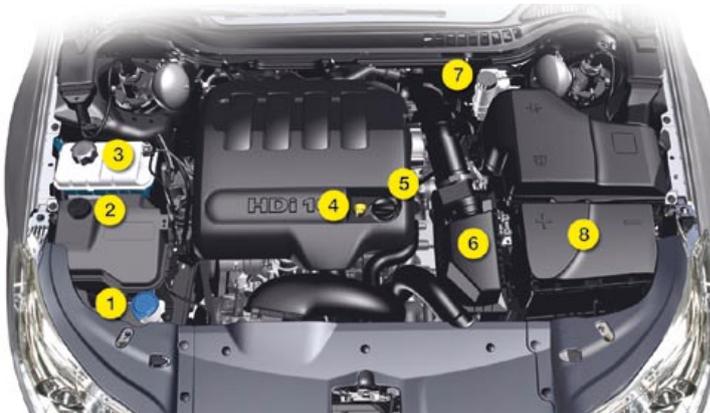
3.0i V6

3 litre V6 petrol engine

1. Screen wash and headlamp wash reservoir.
2. Power steering and suspension fluid reservoir.
3. Engine coolant reservoir.
4. Engine oil gauge.
5. Engine oil topping-up.
6. Brake fluid reservoir.
7. Battery.
8. Air filter.



HDi 110



HDi 138

DIESEL ENGINES

They allow you access for checking the level of the various fluids, for replacing certain components and for repriming the fuel.

1. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
2. Power steering fluid reservoir or power steering and suspension fluid reservoir, depending on equipment.
3. Coolant reservoir.
4. Dipstick.
5. Engine oil filler cap.
6. Air filter.
7. Brake fluid reservoir.
8. Battery.



As the diesel circuit is pressurised, any work on this circuit is prohibited.

Vehicles fitted with the **HDi 138** engine may be fitted with metal suspension. In this case, a different power steering fluid reservoir is fitted.



HDi 173



V6 HDi 208

HDi 173 - V6 HDi 208 engines (with particle filter)

1. Screen wash and headlamp wash reservoir.
2. Power steering and suspension fluid reservoir.
3. Engine coolant reservoir.
4. Engine oil gauge.
5. Engine oil topping-up.
6. Air filter.
7. Brake fluid reservoir.
8. Battery.
9. "+" and "-" terminals for starting with an assisting battery.



The diesel fuel circuit being under high pressure:

- Any intervention on the circuit is prohibited.
- HDi engines are the result of advanced technology.

Any intervention requires special qualifications which only a CITROËN dealer can guarantee.

CHECKING LEVELS

Check all of these levels regularly and top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding circuit checked by a CITROËN dealer.

Oil level



The reading will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 15 minutes.

The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator on the instrument panel, or using the dipstick.

Between two oil changes, the consumption should not exceed 0.5 litre per 600 miles (1,000 km).

Check this level also between each scheduled service and before long journeys.



Dipstick

There are 2 marks on the dipstick:

- **A** = max; never exceed this level,
- **B** = min; top up the level via the oil filler cap, using the type of oil suited to your engine.

Draining the engine

Refer to the Maintenance and Warranty Guide for details of the interval for this operation.



In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, the use of additives in the engine oil is prohibited.

Oil specification

The oil must correspond to your engine and conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Draining the circuit

Refer to the Maintenance and Warranty Guide for details of the interval for this operation.

This fluid must be changed regularly. Fluid which has been used excessively may cause a loss of braking efficiency.

Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations and fulfil the DOT4 standards.

Power steering fluid or power steering and suspension fluid level



This fluid must be topped up by a CITROËN dealer.

Coolant level



The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan. This can operate with the ignition off.

On vehicles which are fitted with a particle emission filter, the fan may operate after the vehicle has been switched off, even if the engine is cold.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop. When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

Draining the circuit

The coolant does not have to be changed.

Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid



In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, the minimum level of this fluid is indicated by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction display.

Top up the level when you stop the vehicle.

Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up or replaced with water.

Reservoir capacities:

- screenwash: approximately 3.5 litres,
- screenwash and headlamp wash: approximately 6.15 litres.

Diesel additive level (Diesel engine with particle emission filter)

A low additive level is indicated by lighting of the service warning light, accompanied by an audible warning and a message on the multifunction display.

Topping up

This additive must be topped up by a CITROËN dealer without delay.

Used products



Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.

Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.



Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.

Empty used oil into the containers provided for this purpose in the CITROËN network.

CHECKS

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the Maintenance and Warranty Guide and in relation to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer.

Battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

However, check that the terminals are clean and correctly tightened, particularly in summer and winter.

When carrying out work on the battery, refer to the "Practical information" section for details of the precautions to be taken before disconnecting the battery and following its reconnection.

Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the Maintenance and Warranty Guide for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary** (refer to the "Engines" paragraph).

A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Refer to the Maintenance and Warranty Guide for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Particulate filter system (Diesel)

Complementary to the catalytic converter, this filter makes an active contribution to the preservation of air quality by the retaining of the unburnt pollutant particles. Black exhaust fumes are thus no longer emitted.

After prolonged idling or driving at very low speeds, you may occasionally notice water vapour being emitted from the exhaust when accelerating. This is of no consequence to the running of the vehicle or to the environment.

If there is risk of clogging, a message appears on the instrument panel display, accompanied by a sound signal and lighting of the service warning lamp.

This alert tells you that the particle filter is starting to fill up (in conditions of urban driving of exceptionally long duration: low speeds, traffic jams etc.).

To regenerate the filter, it is advised to drive as soon as possible, when traffic conditions permit, at a speed of 40 mph (around 60 km/h) or more for at least five minutes (until the alert message disappears).

If this alert persists, consult a CITROËN dealer.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the Maintenance and Warranty Guide for the details of the checking interval for this component.

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the Maintenance and Warranty Guide for details of the checking interval for this component.

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear status



For information relating to checking the brake disc wear status, contact a CITROËN dealer.

Handbrake



If the handbrake travel is too long or if a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the handbrake must be adjusted, even between two services.

This system must be checked by a CITROËN dealer.



Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specifications.

In order to optimise the operation of units as important as the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.

To avoid damaging the electrical units, the use of a high pressure washer in the engine compartment is strictly **prohibited**.

PUNCTURE REPAIR KIT

Complete system consisting of a compressor and a bottle of filling product which permits **temporary repair** of the tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.



The puncture repair kit is located in the boot under the floor.

This repair kit is available from CITROËN dealers.

It is designed to repair holes of a maximum diameter of 6 mm, located exclusively on the tyre tread or shoulder. Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated the tyre.

Using the kit

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Affix the speed limitation sticker to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.



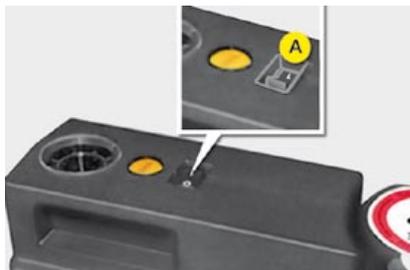
- ☞ Check that the switch **A** is tilted to position "0".
- ☞ Connect the pipe of the bottle **1** to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.



- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

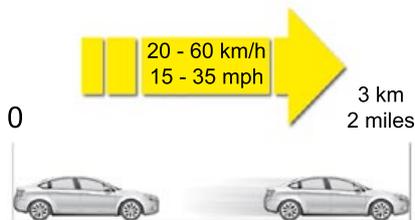


- Switch on the compressor by tilting the switch **A** to position **"1"** until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars.



! If this pressure has not been reached after approximately five to ten minutes, the tyre cannot be repaired; contact a CITROËN dealer to have your vehicle repaired.

- Remove the compressor and unclip and store the bottle in a sealed bag to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid.
- Drive immediately for approximately two miles (three kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph [20 and 60 km/h]), to fill the puncture.
- Stop to check the repair and the pressure.



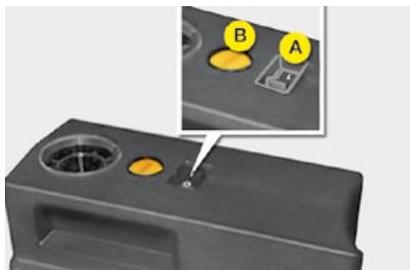
- Connect the compressor pipe directly to the valve of the repaired wheel.



- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket again.
- ☞ Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.



- ☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **A** in position "1"; to deflate: switch **A** in position "0" and press button **B**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the door aperture on the driver's side), then remember to check that the leak is filled correctly (no further loss of pressure after several miles [kilometres]).
- ☞ Remove the compressor, then store the whole kit.
- ☞ Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 120 miles (200 km).
- ☞ Visit a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible to have the tyre repaired or replaced by a technician.



! Take care, the bottle of puncture repair fluid contains ethylene-glycol. This product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep it out of reach of children.

The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the base of the bottle.

The bottle is designed for a single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.

After use, do not discard the bottle into the environment, take it to a CITROËN dealer or to an organisation responsible for its collection.

Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of filling product, available from CITROËN dealers.

If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the tyre under-inflation warning light will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer.

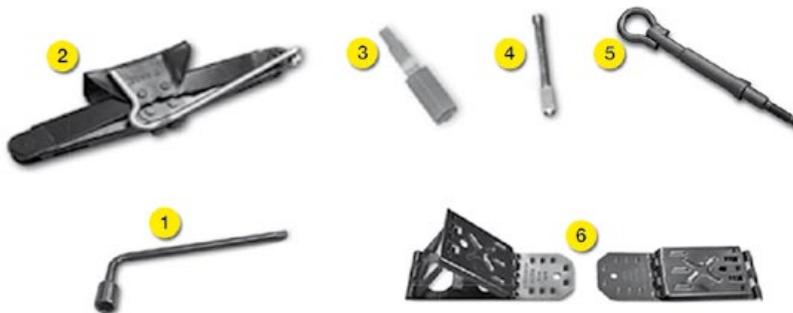
CHANGING A WHEEL

Access to the tools



The tools are to be found in a protective holder inside the spare wheel.

☞ Pull back the retaining strap to have access.



List of tools

1. Handle
2. Jack
3. Tool for the removal/refitting of bolt protectors
4. Centring guide
5. Towing eye
6. Moveable chock (depending on equipment)

Access to the spare wheel



To remove the spare wheel

- ☞ Lift up the boot floor using the strap (Saloon) or the retractable handle (Tourer).
- ☞ Fold back the boot carpet (Saloon).
- ☞ Attach the hook to the upper section of the boot (in the middle of the boot pillar).
- ☞ Detach the strap then push the wheel forwards so as to be able to lift it.



To reposition the spare wheel

- ☞ Position the spare wheel flat in the boot, then pull it towards you.
- ☞ Next place the toolbox inside the wheel, then secure the assembly with the belt.
- ☞ Release the strap to return the boot floor to its initial position.

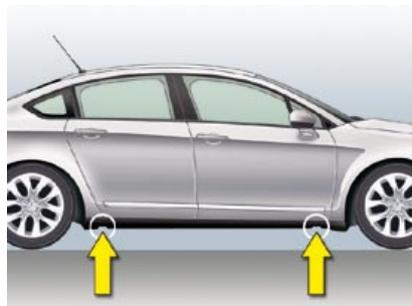


The tyre pressure is indicated on the label located on the left-hand door centre pillar. On this label, the pressures are specified, according to the vehicle load.

Removing a wheel



- ☞ Park the vehicle on stable, firm ground that is not slippery. apply the parking brake.
- ☞ If your vehicle is equipped with "Hydractive III+" suspension, with the engine running at idle, adjust the ground clearance to its maximum height.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and engage first gear or reverse gear depending on any slope (for a vehicle with automatic gearbox, select position **P**).
- ☞ If your vehicle is fitted with "Hydractive III+" suspension, position the chock, whichever direction the gradient may be in, in front of the front wheel diametrically opposite to the one to be replaced.



- ☞ Position the jack at one of the four jacking-points provided on the subframe close to the wheels, then use the handle to unwind the jack until it reaches the ground.



- ☞ Remove the protector from each bolt using tool 3.
- ☞ Slacken the wheel bolts.

- ☞ Continue to extend the jack until the wheel is a few centimetres off the ground.
- ☞ Undo the bolts, remove the wheel.



Before positioning the jack:

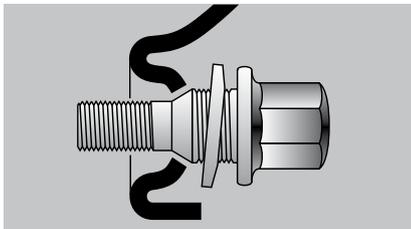
- ☞ Always adjust the vehicle's ground clearance to the "maximum height" position and retain this adjustment for as long as the jack is under the vehicle (do not use the hydraulic adjustments),
- ☞ Immobilise your vehicle on horizontal, stable and non-slippery ground,
- ☞ Ensure that any passengers have left the vehicle and are in a safe place.

Never get underneath the vehicle if it is supported only by the jack.

The jack and all of the tools are specific to your vehicle. Do not use them for any other applications.

Have the original wheel repaired and refitted as soon as possible.

Wheel for temporary use



Your vehicle may be fitted with a spare wheel which is different to those on the vehicle. When fitting the spare wheel, it is normal to notice that the wheel bolt washers do not come into contact with the wheel rim. The spare wheel is secured by the conical tapering of the wheel bolt's shaft.

When refitting the original wheel, ensure that the wheel bolt contact surfaces are clean and in good condition.

Fitting a wheel

- ☞ Fit the wheel on the hub, using the centring guide. Make sure that the contact surface between the hub and the wheel is clean.
- ☞ Screw in the bolts but do not fully tighten them.
- ☞ Lower the jack and remove it.
- ☞ Tighten the wheel bolts, using the wheelbrace.
- ☞ Refit the protectors on the bolts.
- ☞ Return the ground clearance to the normal position.
- ☞ Ensure the tyre pressure is correct and have the balancing checked.

Deflation detection

Such wheels have tyre pressure sensors. It is essential to have repairs carried out by a CITROËN dealer.

Anti-theft bolts

Each wheel is equipped with one anti-theft bolt.

To remove it:

- ☞ Remove the protector using tool **3**.
- ☞ Use the anti-theft socket with the handle.



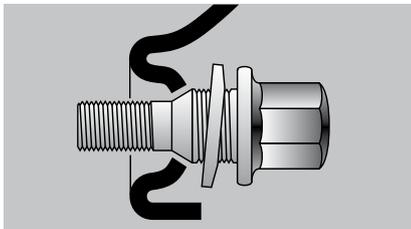
If your vehicle is fitted with a spare wheel of a different size to those on the vehicle, you must not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) whilst using the spare wheel.

The wheel bolts are specific to the type of wheel.

If the type of wheel is changed, check with your CITROËN dealer that the wheel bolts are compatible with the new wheels.

Take care to note down the code number engraved on the head of the anti-theft bolt socket. This will enable you to obtain replacement anti-theft bolt sockets from a dealership.

Wheel for temporary use



Your vehicle may be fitted with a spare wheel which is different to those on the vehicle. When fitting the spare wheel, it is normal to notice that the wheel bolt washers do not come into contact with the wheel rim. The spare wheel is secured by the conical tapering of the wheel bolt's shaft.

When refitting the original wheel, ensure that the wheel bolt contact surfaces are clean and in good condition.

Fitting a wheel

- ☞ Fit the wheel on the hub, using the centring guide. Make sure that the contact surface between the hub and the wheel is clean.
- ☞ Screw in the bolts but do not fully tighten them.
- ☞ Lower the jack and remove it.
- ☞ Tighten the wheel bolts, using the wheelbrace.
- ☞ Refit the protectors on the bolts.
- ☞ Return the ground clearance to the normal position.
- ☞ Ensure the tyre pressure is correct and have the balancing checked.

Deflation detection

Such wheels have tyre pressure sensors. It is essential to have repairs carried out by a CITROËN dealer.

Anti-theft bolts

Each wheel is equipped with one anti-theft bolt.

To remove it:

- ☞ Remove the protector using tool **3**.
- ☞ Use the anti-theft socket with the handle.



If your vehicle is fitted with a spare wheel of a different size to those on the vehicle, you must not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) whilst using the spare wheel.

The wheel bolts are specific to the type of wheel.

If the type of wheel is changed, check with your CITROËN dealer that the wheel bolts are compatible with the new wheels.

Take care to note down the code number engraved on the head of the anti-theft bolt socket. This will enable you to obtain replacement anti-theft bolt sockets from a dealership.

CHANGING A BULB

Operating procedure for replacing a faulty bulb with a new bulb without the use of any tools.

Headlamps

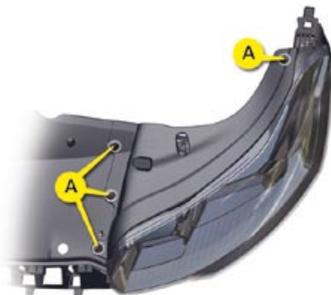
Model with Xenon headlamps (D1S)



1. **Sidelamps:** W 5 W
2. **Dual-function Xenon headlamps (dipped/main):** D1S
3. **Angular lighting:** HP19
4. **Daytime-running lamps:** HP24

For the maintenance of the front headlamp unit and the changing of HP19, D1S and HP21 bulbs, contact a CITROËN dealer.

Changing sidelamps



- ☞ Lift up the pegs **A** to remove the cover on the headlamp.
- ☞ Remove the protective cap **B**.
- ☞ Pull the bulb holder to remove it.
- ☞ Replace the bulb and replace the bulb holder.



- ☞ Replace the protective cap **B**.
- ☞ Replace the cover and fix it in place using the pegs **A**.



Risk of electrocution

Xenon bulbs must be replaced by a CITROËN dealer.

You are advised to change the D1S bulbs at the same time, if one of them has failed.

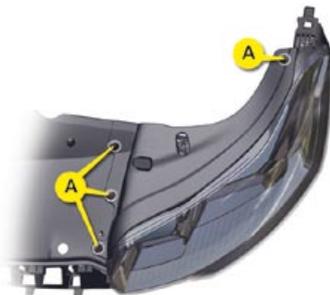
Model with halogen headlamps



1. **Main beams:** H1
2. **Sidelamps:** W 5 W
3. **Dipped beams:** H7
4. **Directional lighting:** H7
5. **Daytime-running lamps:** HP24

For the maintenance of the front headlamp unit and the changing of HP24 bulbs, contact a CITROËN dealer.

Changing main beams



- ☞ Lift up the pegs **A** to remove the cover on the headlamp.
- ☞ Remove the protective cap **B**.
- ☞ Disengage the retaining spring.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it, paying attention to the direction of fitting.
- ☞ Replace the retaining spring.
- ☞ Replace the protective cap **B**.
- ☞ Replace the cover and fix it in place using the pegs **A**.

Changing sidelamps



- ☞ Lift up the pegs **A** to remove the cover on the headlamp.
- ☞ Remove the protective cap **B**.
- ☞ Pull the bulb holder to remove it.
- ☞ Replace the bulb and replace the bulb holder.
- ☞ Replace the protective cap **B**.
- ☞ Replace the cover and fix it in place using the pegs **A**.

Halogen bulbs must not be changed until they have been off for a few minutes (risk of serious burns).

Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

It is essential that only anti-U.V. type bulbs are used in order not to damage the headlamp.

Changing dipped beams



- ☞ Lift up the pegs **A** to remove the cover on the headlamp.
- ☞ Remove the protective cap **C**.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector by pressing it between the thumb and index finger.
- ☞ Free the bulb from its two metal clamps.
- ☞ Take out the bulb.
- ☞ Replace the bulb, exerting a slight axial force.
- ☞ Reconnect the connector, until it is all the way in.
- ☞ Replace the protective cap **C**.
- ☞ Replace the cover and fix it in place using the pegs **A**.

Changing the directional lighting



- ☞ Lift up the pegs **A** to remove the cover on the headlamp.
- ☞ Remove the protective cap **D**.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector by pressing it between the thumb and index finger.
- ☞ Free the bulb from its two metal clamps.
- ☞ Take out the bulb.
- ☞ Replace the bulb, exerting a slight axial force.
- ☞ Reconnect the connector, until it is all the way in.
- ☞ Replace the protective cap **D**.
- ☞ Replace the cover and fix it in place using the pegs **A**.

Changing direction indicators



- ☞ Remove the fixing screw of cover **A** using a torx tool, tip the cover over and remove.
- ☞ Remove the fixing screw of lamp **B** using a torx tool and pull the headlamp unit to remove it from the bumper.
- ☞ Detach the bulb **C** by pressing on bars **1** and **2**.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector (pull whilst pressing on the grey tongue using a flat screwdriver).
- ☞ Replace the bulb.
- ☞ Connect the connector (push the grey tongue in well).
- ☞ Replace the headlamp unit in the bumper.
- ☞ Screw the headlamp unit in.
- ☞ Position the cover using its guides and screw in.

Bulbs: HP24 W

Changing front foglamps



- ☞ Remove the fixing screws of cover **A** using a torx tool, tip the cover over and remove.
- ☞ Remove the fixing screw of lamp **B** using a torx tool and pull the headlamp unit to remove it from the bumper.



- ☞ Disconnect the connector **D**.
- ☞ Remove the bulb by performing a quarter of a turn.
- ☞ Replace the bulb.
- ☞ Connect the connector **D**.
- ☞ Replace the headlamp unit in the bumper.
- ☞ Screw the headlamp unit in.
- ☞ Position the cover using its guides and screw in.

Bulbs: H8

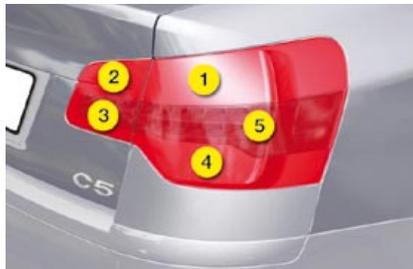
Changing side repeaters



The side repeater is sealed. If the bulb is faulty, replace the side repeater. Consult a CITROËN dealer.

When refitting, take care not to trap the electrical cables.

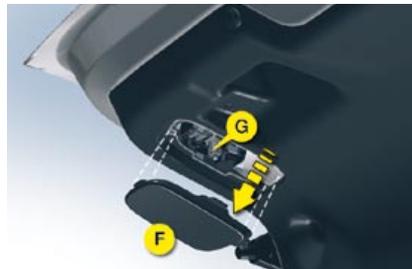
Rear lamps (Saloon)



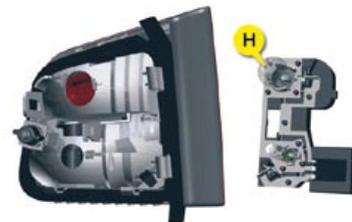
Identify the failed bulb.

1. **Stop-lamps and sidelamps:** P21 W/5 W
2. **Sidelamps:** R 5 W
3. **Reversing lamp:** H21 W
4. **Foglamps:** H21 W
5. **Direction indicators:** P21 W

Changing the lamps on the boot



- ☞ Open the boot.
- ☞ Using a flat screwdriver, remove the 3 clips which fix the trim in the lamp area.
- ☞ Partially remove the trim **F**.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector **G**.



- ☞ Detach the bulb holder **H**.
- ☞ Replace the bulb.
- ☞ Replace the bulb holder **H**.
- ☞ Connect the connector **G**.
- ☞ Replace and fix the trim **F** with its clips.



In some climatic conditions, mist may appear on the headlamp/indicator lenses.

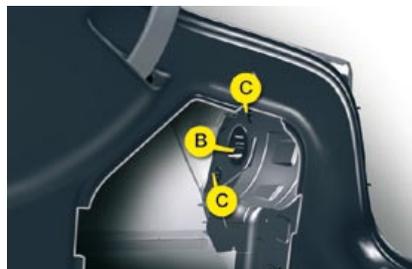
This is normal and will disappear (e.g. after the lamps have been on for a few minutes).

If it does not, contact a CITROËN dealer.

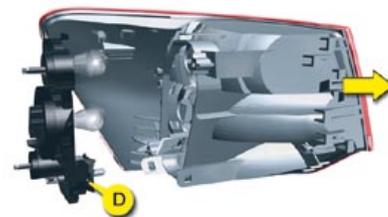
Changing the lamps on the wing



- ☞ Remove the lateral boot trim flap **A**. To do so, pull it towards the inside of the boot, then pull it upwards.



- ☞ Disconnect connector **B**.
- ☞ Unscrew the 2 fixings **C**.
- ☞ Remove the lamp from its housing.



- ☞ Detach the bulb holder **D**.
- ☞ Replace the bulb.
- ☞ Replace the bulb holder **D**.
- ☞ Place the lamp in its housing.
- ☞ Screw in the 2 fixings **C**.
- ☞ Connect connector **B**.
- ☞ Refit the trim **A**.

You can use the spare wheel jack handle to screw or unscrew the fixings **C**.

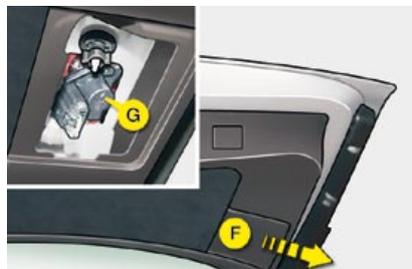
Rear lamps (Tourer)



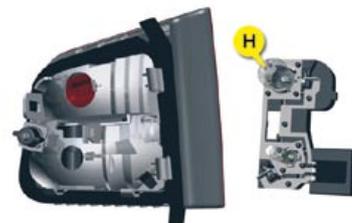
Identify the failed bulb.

1. **Stop-lamps and sidelamps:** P21 W/5 W
2. **Sidelamps:** R 5 W
3. **Reversing lamp:** H21 W
4. **Foglamps:** H21 W
5. **Direction indicators:** P21 W

Changing the lamps on the boot



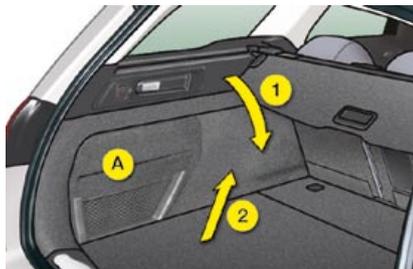
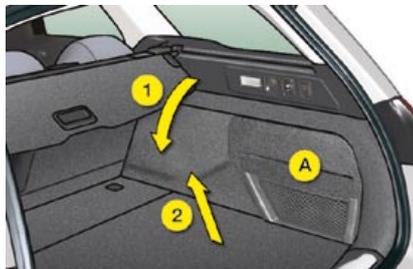
- ☞ Open the boot.
- ☞ Using a flat screwdriver, remove the 3 clips which fix the trim in the lamp area.
- ☞ Partially remove the trim **F**.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector **G**.



- ☞ Detach the bulb holder **H**.
- ☞ Replace the bulb.
- ☞ Replace the bulb holder **H**.
- ☞ Connect the connector **G**.
- ☞ Replace and fix the trim **F** with its clips.

In some climatic conditions, mist may appear on the headlamp/indicator lenses. This is normal and will disappear (e.g. after the lamps have been on for a few minutes). If it does not, contact a CITROËN dealer.

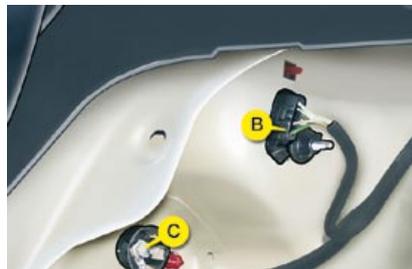
Changing the lamps on the wing



Remove the lateral boot trim **A**.

To do so:

- ☞ Pull it towards towards the inside of the boot.
- ☞ Pull it upwards.



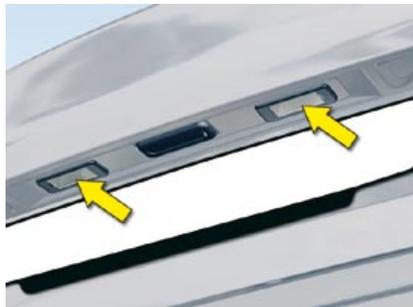
- ☞ Disconnect the connector **B**.
- ☞ Unscrew the fixing screw **C**.
- ☞ Remove the lamp from its housing.



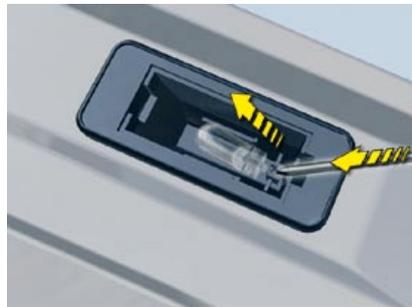
- ☞ Detach the bulb holder **D**.
- ☞ Replace the faulty bulb.
- ☞ Replace the bulb holder **D**.
- ☞ Place the lamp in its housing.
- ☞ Screw in the fixing screw **C**.
- ☞ Connect the connector **B**.
- ☞ Refit the trim **A**.

You can use the spare wheel jack handle to screw or unscrew the fixing screw **C**.

Changing number plate lights (W 5 W)

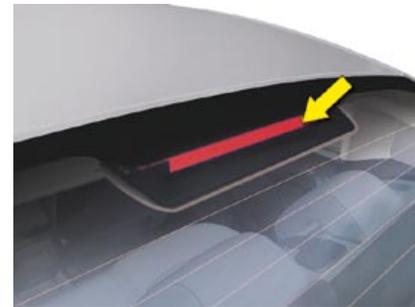


- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the external holes of the lens.
- ☞ Push it outwards to unclip it.



- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

Changing the third brake light (diodes)



For the replacement of this type of diode light, contact a CITROËN dealer.

Changing interior bulbs



Interior lamps

- ☞ Unclip the transparent cover of the interior lamp to reach the bulb.

Bulb: W 5 W

Spotlamp

- ☞ Detach the cover.
- ☞ If necessary, detach the partition of the affected spotlamp.

Rear reading lamps (Tourer)



- ☞ Detach the cover of the reading lamp to access the bulb.

Bulb: W 5 W

Boot lamp



- ☞ Detach the cover and use a W 5 W bulb.

Pavement lighting



- ☞ Detach the cover and use a W 5 W bulb.

Floor lighting



- ☞ Detach the cover and use a W 5 W bulb.

Glovebox



- ☞ Detach the cover and use a W 5 W bulb.

Changing interior bulbs



Interior lamps

- ☞ Unclip the transparent cover of the interior lamp to reach the bulb.

Bulb: W 5 W

Spotlamp

- ☞ Detach the cover.
- ☞ If necessary, detach the partition of the affected spotlamp.

Rear reading lamps (Tourer)



- ☞ Detach the cover of the reading lamp to access the bulb.

Bulb: W 5 W

Boot lamp



- ☞ Detach the cover and use a W 5 W bulb.

Pavement lighting



- ☞ Detach the cover and use a W 5 W bulb.

Floor lighting



- ☞ Detach the cover and use a W 5 W bulb.

Glovebox



- ☞ Detach the cover and use a W 5 W bulb.

CHANGING A FUSE

Operating procedure for replacing a faulty fuse with a new fuse to rectify a failure of the corresponding function. The 2 fuseboxes are located below the dashboard and under the bonnet.

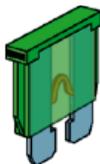
Replacing a fuse

Before replacing a fuse, you should ascertain the cause of the fault and have it remedied. The numbers of the fuses are indicated on the fusebox.

Replace the fuse that has blown with one of the same rating (same colour).

Use the special pliers **1** placed on the flap close to the fuseboxes. The flap also has spare fuses available.

Good



Bad



Pliers 1



Fuses under the dashboard

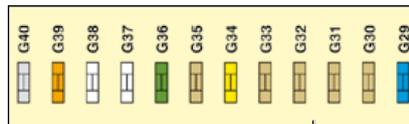
Access to the fuses

- ☞ open the storage box to its stopping point then pull firmly on it horizontally,
- ☞ remove the trim by pulling sharply on the bottom.

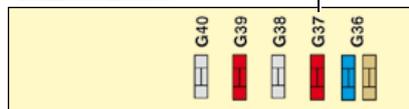
When refitting the storage box, observe the following advice:

- With the storage box horizontal, refit the bottom ensuring that the lower cut-outs are in line with the pins.
- Give a sharp push to the front.
- Close the storage box, ensuring that the springs located behind pass over the top.

Fusebox A



Replacement fuses and pliers 1



Fusebox C



Fusebox B

CHANGING A FUSE

Operating procedure for replacing a faulty fuse with a new fuse to rectify a failure of the corresponding function. The 2 fuseboxes are located below the dashboard and under the bonnet.

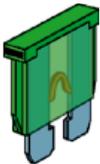
Replacing a fuse

Before replacing a fuse, you should ascertain the cause of the fault and have it remedied. The numbers of the fuses are indicated on the fusebox.

Replace the fuse that has blown with one of the same rating (same colour).

Use the special pliers **1** placed on the flap close to the fuseboxes. The flap also has spare fuses available.

Good



Bad



Pliers 1



Fuses under the dashboard

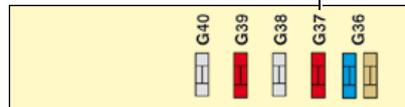
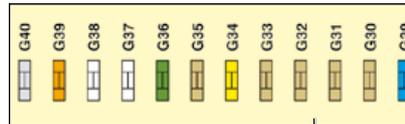
Access to the fuses

- ☞ open the storage box to its stopping point then pull firmly on it horizontally,
- ☞ remove the trim by pulling sharply on the bottom.

When refitting the storage box, observe the following advice:

- With the storage box horizontal, refit the bottom ensuring that the lower cut-outs are in line with the pins.
- Give a sharp push to the front.
- Close the storage box, ensuring that the springs located behind pass over the top.

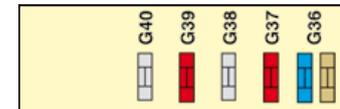
Fusebox A



Fusebox C



Replacement fuses and pliers 1



Fusebox B

FUSEBOX A

Table of fuses

Fuse N°	Rating	Function
G29	-	-
G30	5 A	Heated rear view mirrors
G31	5 A	Rain and brightness sensor
G32	5 A	Seat belt not fastened warning lamps
G33	5 A	Electrochrome rear view mirrors
G34	20 A	Sunroof (saloon)
G35	5 A	Passenger door lighting - passenger rear view mirror adjustment
G36	30 A	Electric tailgate (Tourer)
G37	20 A	Heated front seats
G38	30 A	Driver's electric seat
G39	30 A	Passenger's electric seat - HIFI amplifier
G40	3 A	Trailer relay unit supply

FUSEBOX B

Fuse N°	Rating	Function
G36	15 A	6 speed automatic gearbox
	5 A	4 speed automatic gearbox
G37	10 A	Daytime-running lamps - Diagnostic socket
G38	3 A	ESP
G39	10 A	Hydraulic suspension
G40	3 A	STOP switch

FUSEBOX C

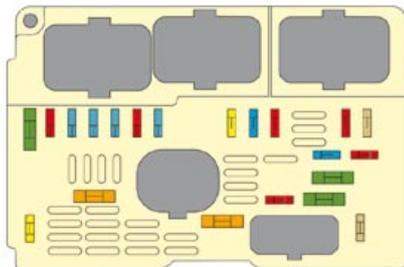
Fuse N°	Rating	Function
F1	15 A	Rear screen wipe (Tourer)
F2	30 A	Locking and deadlocking relay
F3	5 A	Airbags
F4	10 A	Automatic gearbox - additional heater unit (Diesel) - electrochrome rear view mirrors
F5	30 A	Front window - sun roof - passenger door lighting - passenger rear view mirror adjustment
F6	30 A	Rear window
F7	5 A	Vanity mirror lighting - Glove box lighting - interior lamps - torch (Tourer)
F8	20 A	Radio - CD changer - Controls at the steering wheel - Display - Deflation detection - Electric boot ECU
F9	30 A	Cigar-lighter - front 12 V socket
F10	15 A	Alarm - Controls on the steering wheel, signalling and screen wipe controls
F11	15 A	Low current anti-theft switch
F12	15 A	Driver's electric seat - instrument panel - seat belt not fastened warning lamps -air conditioning controls
F13	5 A	Engine relay unit - Hydraulic suspension pump cut-off relay - airbag ECU supply
F14	15 A	Rain and brightness sensor - parking assistance - passenger's electric seat - trailer relay unit - HIFI amplifier ECU - Hands-free kit - Lane Departure Warning System
F15	30 A	Locking and deadlocking relay
F17	40 A	Heated rear screen - exterior heated rear view mirrors
FSH	SHUNT	PARK SHUNT

Fuses under the bonnet



Access to the fuses

☞ Undo each screw by a 1/4 turn.



After a repair, take care to re-close the cover.

Any repairs on the MAXI fuses (that give additional protection), located in the fuseboxes, must be left to a CITROËN dealer.

Table of fuses

Fuse N°	Rating	Function
F1	20 A	Engine control unit
F2	15 A	Horn
F3	10 A	Screen wash pump
F4	10 A	Headlamp wash pump
F5	15 A	Starter
F6	10 A	Air flow meter - Directional headlamps - Diagnostic socket
F7	10 A	Automatic gearbox lever lock - Power steering
F8	25 A	Starter
F9	10 A	Clutch switch - Stop switch
F10	30 A	Starter
F11	40 A	Air conditioning blower
F12	30 A	Wipers
F13	40 A	BSI supply (ignition on)
F14	30 A	-
F15	10 A	Right-hand main beam
F16	10 A	Left-hand main beam
F17	15 A	Right-hand dipped beam
F18	15 A	Left-hand dipped beam
F19	15 A	Starter
F20	10 A	Starter
F21	5 A	Starter

Fuses on the battery (All engines except V6 HDi)



Access to the fuses

- ☞ detach and remove the cover,
- ☞ change the fuse.

Table of fuses

Fuse N°	Rating	Function
F6	25 A	Rear 12 V socket (max power: 100 W)
F7	15 A	Foglamps
F8	20 A	Additional burner (Diesel)
F9	30 A	Electric parking brake



Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with either standard or optional equipment.

Before installing electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, consult a CITROËN dealer.

CITROËN declines all responsibility for the consequences and costs that are caused by faults or repairs on your vehicle resulting from the installation of accessories that are not supplied and/or not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in conformity with its requirements, particularly when the total consumption of additional devices exceeds 10 milliamperes.

The Maxi fuses give additional protection to electrical systems. any work on them must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer.

After a repair, take care to re-close the cover.

If the cover is not correctly positioned or not properly closed, this could cause serious problems on your vehicle. For the same reason, take care not to spill any liquid in the fusebox.

BATTERY

Procedure for charging your battery when it is flat or for starting the engine using another battery.

Access to the battery



The battery is located under the bonnet.

To gain access to it:

- ☞ open the bonnet using the interior lever, then the exterior lever,
- ☞ secure the bonnet strut,
- ☞ remove the plastic cover to gain access to the two terminals,
- ☞ unclip the fuse box to remove the battery, if necessary.

V6 HDi engine

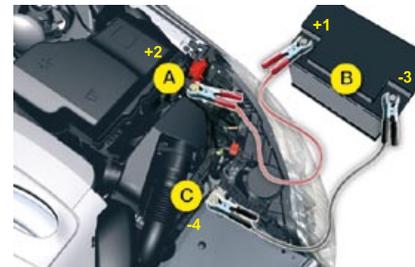


The battery is located in the boot under the left-hand wing trim.

To gain access to it:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ open the flap and remove the battery.

Starting using another battery



- ☞ Lift the pins to remove the front left headlamp cover (V6 HDi engine).
 - ☞ Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A**, then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B**.
 - ☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B**.
- V6 HDi engine: The negative terminal (-) is located under the red cover.
- ☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
 - ☞ Operate the starter, let the engine run.
 - ☞ Wait until the engine returns to idle and disconnect the cables.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

- ☞ Disconnect the battery from the vehicle.
- ☞ Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
- ☞ Reconnect starting with the negative terminal (-).
- ☞ Check that the terminals and connectors are clean. If they are covered with sulphate (whitish or greenish deposit), remove them and clean them.



The batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.

Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

11

It is advisable to disconnect the battery if the vehicle is to be left unused for more than one month.



Do not disconnect the terminals while the engine is running.

Do not charge the batteries without disconnecting the terminals first.

Do not touch the clips during the operation.

Do not lean over the batteries.

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order to connection, ensuring that they do not touch.

Before disconnecting the battery

Wait 2 minutes after switching off the ignition before disconnecting the battery.

Close the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery.

Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to permit initialisation of the electronic systems. However, if slight difficulties are encountered following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise:

- the remote control key,
- the glass panoramic roof shutter,
- the GPS satellite navigation system.

ENERGY ECONOMY MODE

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped headlamps, courtesy lights, etc. for a maximum combined duration of thirty minutes.

Switching to economy mode

Once the thirty minutes are over, a message appears on the multi-function display indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

If the telephone is being used at this time:

- it will be maintained for 5 minutes with radio-CD hands-free kit,
- it will be interrupted after 10 minutes with the MyWay audio-navigation system,
- you can complete your call with the NaviDrive system.

This period may be significantly reduced if the battery charge is low.

Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically next time the vehicle is driven.

- ☞ In order to resume the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run for a few minutes.

The time available will then be double the duration for which the engine was left running. However, this time will always be between five and thirty minutes.



A flat battery prevents the engine from starting (refer to the corresponding paragraph).

TOWING THE VEHICLE

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

Access to the tools



The towing eye is installed in the jack box placed in the spare wheel.

To gain access to it:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ raise the floor,
- ☞ remove the towing eye from the jack box.

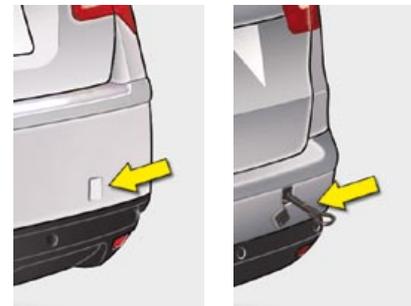
Towing your vehicle



- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the top.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towbar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lights on the towed vehicle.
- ☞ Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** on the automatic gearbox).

Failure to observe this special condition could result in damage to certain braking components and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

Towing another vehicle



- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing:
 - on the right (Saloon),
 - at the bottom (Tourer).
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towbar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lights on the towed vehicle.

When towing with all four wheels on the ground, always use a towbar.

When towing with only two wheels on the ground, always use professional lifting equipment.

When towing with the engine off, there is no longer any braking or steering assistance.

TOWING A TRAILER, A CARAVAN, ETC.

Towbar suited to the attachment of a trailer or caravan with additional signalling and lighting.



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

We recommend the use of original CITROËN towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a CITROËN dealer.



If the trailer is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it is imperative that it is fitted using the electrical pre-equipment installed at the rear of the vehicle, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Driving with a trailer subjects the towing vehicle to more significant stress and its driver must be particularly careful.

Driving advice

Distribution of loads

- ☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towing load must be reduced by 10 % and so on for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

Refer to the "Technical Data" section for details of the weights and towing loads which apply to your vehicle.

Side wind

- ☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

- ☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towing load on a long slope depends on the gradient and the outside temperature.

In all cases, pay attention to the coolant temperature.



- ☞ If the warning light and the **STOP** warning light come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.

Tyres

- ☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lights

- ☞ Check the electrical signalling on the trailer.

The rear parking assistance will be deactivated automatically if an original CITROËN towbar is used.

ROOF BARS

The design of your vehicle, for your safety and to avoid damage to the roof and tailgate, requires the use of roof bars that are tested and approved by CITROËN.

Regardless of the type of loading equipment to be transported on the roof (bicycle carrier, ski carrier...), it is imperative that you add transverse roof bars.

Recommendations

- ☞ Distribute your load evenly, avoiding overloading on one side.
- ☞ Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
- ☞ Anchor the load securely and draw attention to it if any part of it is overhanging.
- ☞ Drive gently, as the vehicle will be more liable to the effects of side winds (vehicle stability may be altered).
- ☞ Remove the roof bars as soon as they are no longer needed.



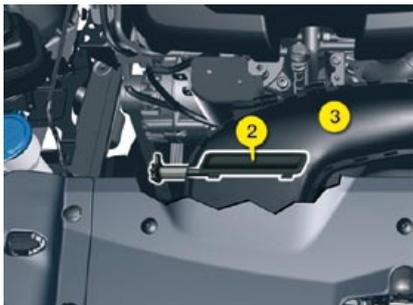
Maximum load that can be distributed on the roof bars (for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm; except bicycle carrier): 80 kg.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt your speed to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the roof.

Please refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations concerning the transportation of objects which are longer than the vehicle.

VERY COLD PROTECTION*

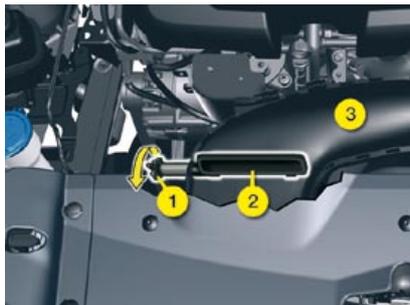
Moveable device which prevents the intake of snow particles, which could obstruct the air filter.



Diesel engine HDi 173 FAP

Normal situation

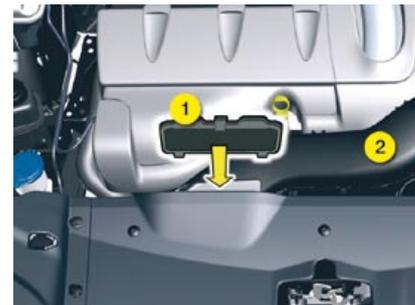
The shutter **2** is in a horizontal position in the air duct **3**.



Snow situation

☞ Push and rotate the knob **1** by 90 ° in the direction of the arrow in order to position the shutter **2** in a vertical position in the air duct **3**.

To return to the normal situation, push the knob **1** then rotate in the opposite direction.



Diesel engine V6 HDi 208 FAP

Snow situation

Slide the deflector **1** into the air duct **2** and clip in.

It is essential to remove the very cold protection:

- When the outside temperature exceeds 10 °C.
- When driving at speeds of over 75 mph (approximately 120 km/h).

* According to country.

SNOW GUARD*

Moveable device which prevents the accumulation of snow by the radiator cooling fan.

Fitting

- ☞ Bring the 2 sections of the snow guard up to the upper and lower sections of the front bumper.
- ☞ Press on the surround to clip in one by one the fixing clips.

Remove

- ☞ Using a screwdriver, lift it up to detach each fixing clip one by one.

It is essential to remove the snow guard:

- When the outside temperature exceeds 10 °C,
- When towing,
- When driving at speeds of over 75 mph (approximately 120 km/h).



Before fitting



After fitting



ACCESSORIES

A wide range of accessories and original parts is offered by the CITROËN network.

These accessories and parts have been tested and approved for reliability and safety.

They are all adapted to your vehicle and benefit from CITROËN's recommendation and warranty.

This product range is structured around 5 categories:

"Protection": anti-theft alarm, wheel anti-theft devices, stolen vehicle tracking system, breathalyser, first aid kit, warning triangle, high visibility safety jacket, dog guard, snow chains, non-skid covers, fog lamps kit, puncture repair kit, rear parking assistance...

"Comfort and leisure": mats*, boot tray, boot carpet, sun blinds, mini-bar, fragrance cartridges, roof bars, bicycle carrier, ski carrier, roof boxes, towbars, child seats and booster cushions...

"Navigation and communication": Bluetooth® hands-free kit, audio equipment, portable satellite navigation system, DVD player, auxiliary cable for connecting a portable MP3 player, USB Box, speakers...

* To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned and secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

"Personalisation": seat covers, alloy wheels, wheel trims, mud flaps...

"Accessories": windscreen wash fluid, interior and exterior cleaning and maintenance products, body-work touch-up aerosol and pen...

Depending on the country in which the vehicle is sold, it may be compulsory to have a high visibility safety jacket, warning triangle and spare bulbs available in the vehicle.

 The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by CITROËN may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system and excess consumption. Please note this specific warning. You are advised to contact a CITROËN representative to be shown the range of recommended equipment and accessories.

TECHNICAL DATA

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES				
Model codes: RD... RW...	6FYC	RFJC	RFJF	RFJC/FF	XFVJ
PETROL ENGINES	1.8 l. 16V 127 bhp	2 l. 16V 143 bhp		Bioflex 2 l. 16V 143 bhp	3 l. V6 24V 215 bhp
Cubic capacity (cm ³)	1 749	1 997		1 997	2 946
Bore x stroke (mm)	82.7 x 81.4	85 x 88		85 x 88	87 x 82.6
EU standard maximum power (kW)	92	103		103	155
Maximum power engine speed (rpm)	6 000	6 000		6 000	6 000
EU standard maximum torque (Nm)	170	200		200	290
Maximum torque engine speed (rpm)	3 750	4 000		4 000	3 750
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded		Unleaded/E85	Unleaded
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes		Yes	Yes
GEARBOXES	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Auto. (4-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Auto. (6-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)					
Engine (with cartridge replacement)	5	5	5	-	4.75
Gearbox - Final drive	-	-	-	-	-

TECHNICAL DATA

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES				
Model codes: RD... RW....	9HZC 9HZC/1	RHF8	RHRJ	4HTH	UHZJ
DIESEL ENGINES	1.6 l. HDi 110 bhp	2 l. HDi 140 bhp	2 l. HDi 138 bhp	2 l. HDi 173 bhp	V6 HDi 208 bhp
Cubic capacity (cm ³)	1 560	1 997		2 179	2 720
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3	85 x 88		85 x 96	81 x 88
EU standard maximum power (kW)	80	103	100	125	150
Maximum power engine speed (rpm)	4 000	4 000		4 000	4 000
EU standard maximum torque (Nm)	240	320		370	440
Maximum torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750	2 000		1 500	1 900
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel		Diesel	Diesel
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes		Yes	Yes
Particle emission filter (PEF)	Yes	Yes		Yes	Yes
GEARBOXES	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Auto. (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Auto. (6-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)					
Engine (with cartridge replacement)	3.75	5.25		5.25	5.5
Gearbox - Final drive	1.9	-	-	-	-

CONSUMPTION (SALOON)			In accordance with directive 80/1268/CEE			
Petrol engines	Gearboxes	Model codes: RD...	Urban driving (litres/100 km)	Inter-urban driving (litres/100 km)	Mixed driving (litres/100 km)	Emission of CO ₂ by weight (g/km)
1.8 l. 16V 127 bhp	Manual	6FYC	10.8	6.2	7.9	188
2 l. 16V 143 bhp	Manual	RFJC	12	6.3	8.4	198
	Auto.	RFJF	12.7	6.7	8.9	212
Bioflex 2 l. 16V 143 bhp	Manual	RFJC/FF	12*	6.3*	8.4*	198*
			15.5**	9.1**	11.4**	189**
3 l. V6 24V 215 bhp	Auto.	XFVJ	15.6	7.5	10.5	248

* Unleaded.

** E85.

Quality of the fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are perfectly compatible with E5 type petrol biofuels (containing 5 % ethanol), conforming to European standard EN 228.

E85 type fuels (containing up to 85 % ethanol) are reserved exclusively for vehicles marketed for the use of this type of fuel (BioFlex vehicles). The quality of the ethanol must comply with European standard EN 15376.

For Brazil only, special vehicles are marketed to run on fuels containing up to 100 % ethanol (type E100).

The consumption figures shown here correspond to the values communicated at the time of printing.

These consumption values were established in accordance with Directive 80/1268/CEE. They may vary depending on the style of driving, traffic conditions, weather conditions, the load in the vehicle, the maintenance of the vehicle and the use of equipment.

TECHNICAL DATA

CONSUMPTION (TOURER)			In accordance with directive 80/1268/CEE			
Petrol engines	Gearboxes	Model codes: RW...	Urban driving (litres/100 km)	Inter-urban driving (litres/100 km)	Mixed driving (litres/100 km)	Emission of CO ₂ by weight (g/km)
1.8 l. 16V 127 bhp	Manual	6FYC	11.1	6.3	8.1	192
2 l. 16V 143 bhp	Manual	RFJC	12.1	6.4	8.5	200
	Auto.	RFJF	12.8	6.8	9	214
Bioflex 2 l. 16V 143 bhp	Manual	RFJC/FF	12.1*	6.4*	8.5*	200*
			15.6**	9.2**	11.5**	191**
3 l. V6 24V 215 bhp	Auto.	XFVJ	15.7	7.6	10.6	250

* Unleaded.

** E85.

The consumption figures shown here correspond to the values communicated at the time of printing.

These consumption values were established in accordance with Directive 80/1268/CEE. They may vary depending on the style of driving, traffic conditions, weather conditions, the load in the vehicle, the maintenance of the vehicle and the use of equipment.

TECHNICAL DATA

CONSUMPTION (SALOON)			In accordance with directive 80/1268/CEE			
Diesel engines	Gearboxes	Model codes: RD...	Urban driving (litres/100 km)	Inter-urban driving (litres/100 km)	Mixed driving (litres/100 km)	Emission of CO ₂ by weight (g/km)
1.6 l. HDi 110 bhp Airdream	Manual	9HZC/1	6.6	4.6	5.3	140
1.6 l. HDi 110 bhp	Manual	9HZC	7.3	4.7	5.6	149
2 l. HDi 140 bhp	Manual	RHF8	7.5	4.8	5.8	153
2 l. HDi 138 bhp	Auto.	RHRJ	9.9	5.5	7.1	189
2 l. HDi 173 bhp	Manual	4HTH	8.8	5.2	6.5	172
V6 HDi 208 bhp	Auto.	UHZJ	11.8	6.4	8.4	223

The consumption figures shown here correspond to the values communicated at the time of printing.

These consumption values were established in accordance with Directive 80/1268/CEE. They may vary depending on the style of driving, traffic conditions, weather conditions, the load in the vehicle, the maintenance of the vehicle and the use of accessories.

Quality of the fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are perfectly compatible with biofuels which conform to current and future European standards (diesel fuel which complies with standard EN 590 mixed with a biofuel which complies with standard EN 14214) which can be distributed at the pumps (possible incorporation of 0 to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel circuit).

TECHNICAL DATA

CONSUMPTION (TOURER)			In accordance with directive 80/1268/CEE			
Diesel engines	Gearboxes	Model codes: RW...	Urban driving (litres/100 km)	Inter-urban driving (litres/100 km)	Mixed driving (litres/100 km)	Emission of CO ₂ by weight (g/km)
1.6 l. HDi 110 bhp Airdream	Manual	9HZC/1	6.6	4.6	5.3	140
1.6 l. HDi 110 bhp	Manual	9HZC	7.4	4.8	5.7	150
2 l. HDi 140 bhp	Manual	RHF8	7.6	4.9	5.9	155
2 l. HDi 138 bhp	Auto.	RHRJ	10	5.6	7.2	191
2 l. HDi 173 bhp	Manual	4HTH	8.9	5.3	6.6	175
V6 HDi 208 bhp	Auto.	UHZJ	11.9	6.5	8.5	225

The consumption figures shown here correspond to the values communicated at the time of printing.

These consumption values were established in accordance with Directive 80/1268/CEE. They may vary depending on the style of driving, traffic conditions, weather conditions, the load in the vehicle, the maintenance of the vehicle and the use of accessories.

TECHNICAL DATA

WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (SALOON) in kg					
Petrol engines	1.8 l. 16V 127 bhp	2 l. 16V 143 bhp		Bioflex 2 l. 16V 143 bhp	3 l. V6 24V 215 bhp
Gearboxes	Manual	Manual	Auto.	Manual	Auto.
Model codes: RD....	6FYC	RFJC	RFJF	RFJC/FF	XFVJ
- Unladen weight	1 510	1 521	1 583	1 521	1 725
- Kerb weight	1 585	1 596	1 658	1 596	1 800
- Payload	505	542	507	542	505
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 015	2 063	2 090	2 063	2 230
- Gross train weight (GTW)	3 315	3 563	3 590	3 563	3 630
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 300	1 500		1 500	1 400
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit)	1 530	1 720		1 720	1 650
- Unbraked trailer	750	750		750	750
- Recommended nose weight	62	69		69	66

The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 100 km/h (approx. 60 mph) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High exterior temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the exterior temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

TECHNICAL DATA

WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (TOURER) in kg

Petrol engines	1.8 l. 16V 127 bhp	2 l. 16V 143 bhp		Bioflex 2 l. 16V 143 bhp	3 l. V6 24V 215 bhp
	Manual	Manual	Auto.	Manual	Auto.
Model codes: RW...	6FYC	RFJC	RFJF	RFJC/FF	XFVJ
- Unladen weight	1 549	1 578	1 619	1 578	1 761
- Kerb weight	1 624	1 653	1 694	1 653	1 836
- Payload	605	605	605	605	605
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 154	2 183	2 224	2 183	2 366
- Gross train weight (GTW)	3 454	3 683	3 724	3 683	3 666
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 300	1 500		1 500	1300
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit)	1 600	1 790	1 800	1 790	1 600
- Unbraked trailer	750	750		750	750
- Recommended nose weight	64	72		72	68

The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 100 km/h (approx. 60 mph) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High exterior temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the exterior temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

TECHNICAL DATA

WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (SALOON) in kg					
Diesel engines	1.6 l. HDi 110 bhp	2 l. HDi 140 bhp	2 l. HDi 138 bhp	2 l. HDi 173 bhp	V6 HDi 208 bhp
Gearboxes	Manual	Manual	Auto.	Manual	Auto.
Model codes: RD...	9HZC 9HZC/1	RHF8	RHRJ	4HTH	UHZJ
- Unladen weight	1 503	1 608	1 658	1 729	1 766
- Kerb weight	1 578	1 683	1 733	1 804	1 841
- Payload	537	547	532	487	544
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 040	2 155	2 190	2 216	2 310
- Gross train weight (GTW)	3 140	3 755	3 490	3 816	3 710
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 100	1 600	1 300	1 600	1 400
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit)	1 370	1 820	1 560	1 820	1 690
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	55	73	63	73	68

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

TECHNICAL DATA

WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (TOURER) in kg					
Diesel engines	1.6 l. HDi 110 bhp	2 l. HDi 140 bhp	2 l. HDi 138 bhp	2 l. HDi 173 bhp	V6 HDi 208 bhp
Gearboxes	Manual	Manual	Auto.	Manual	Auto.
Model codes: RW...	9HZC 9HZC/1	RHF8	RHRJ	4HTH	UHZJ
- Unladen weight	1 537	1 655	1 695	1 765	1 802
- Kerb weight	1 612	1 730	1 770	1 840	1 877
- Payload	641	621	631	587	571
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 178	2 276	2 326	2 352	2 373
- Gross train weight (GTW)	3 178	3 776	3 526	3 952	3 676
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 000	1 500	1 200	1 600	1 300
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit)	1 300	1 800	1 500	1 900	1 600
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	52	72	60	77	64

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 100 km/h (approx. 60 mph) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

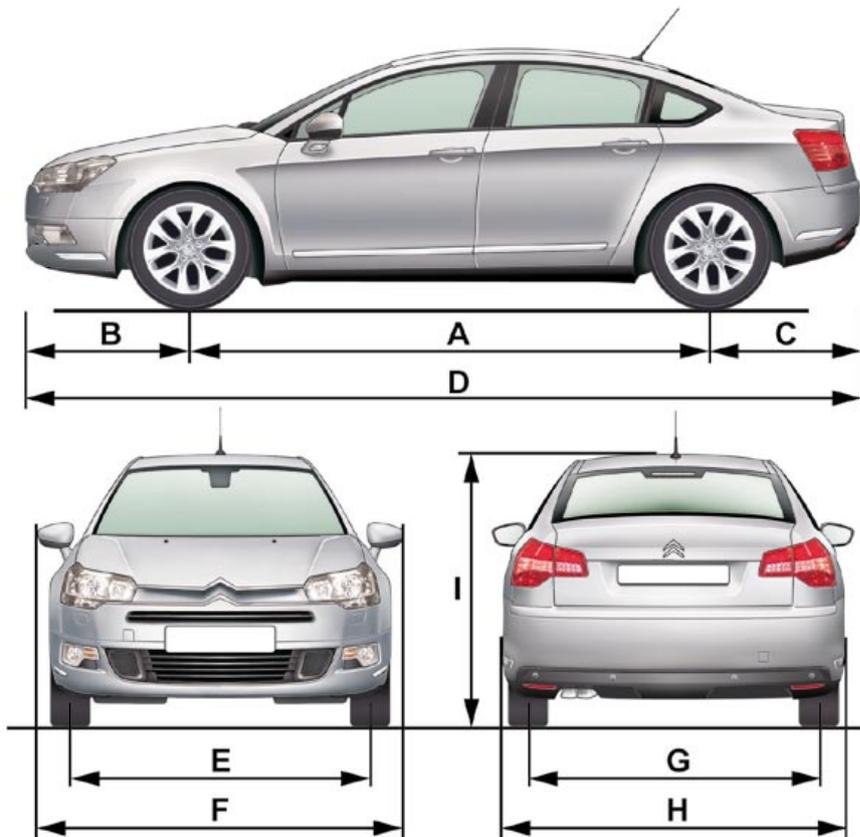
High exterior temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the exterior temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

DIMENSIONS (IN MM)

Exterior (Saloon)

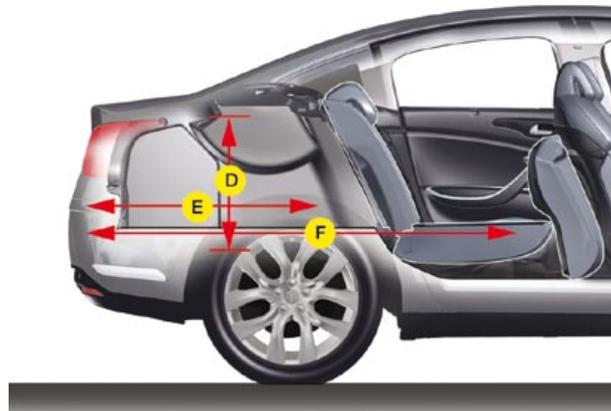
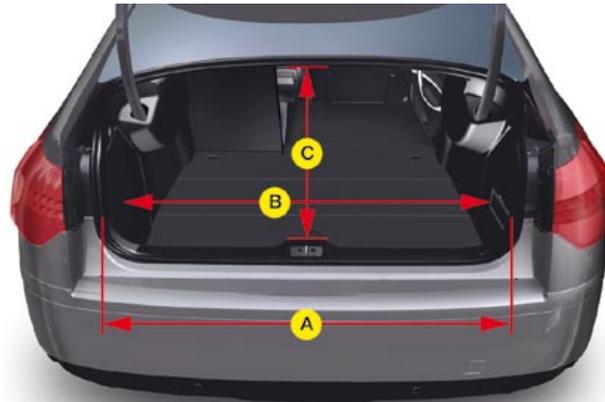
A	2 815
B	1 054
C	910
D	4 779
E	1 586
F	2 096
G	1 557
H	1 860
I*	1 451

* Without roof bars.



Interior (Saloon)

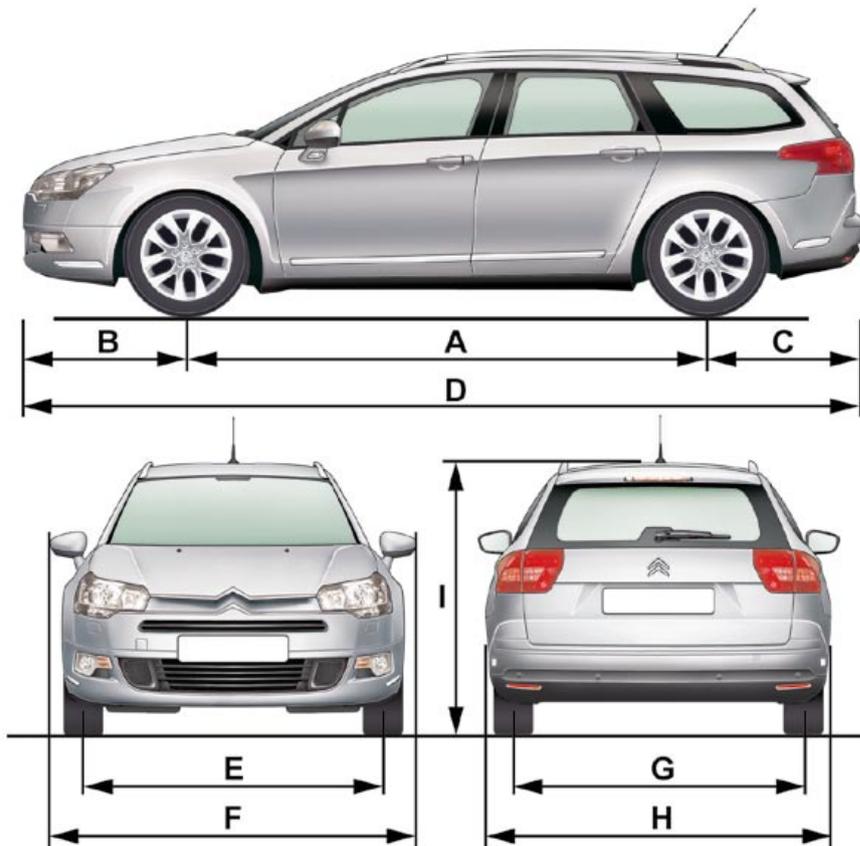
A	1 030
B	1 115
C	566
D	504
E	1 040
F	1 705



Exterior (Tourer)

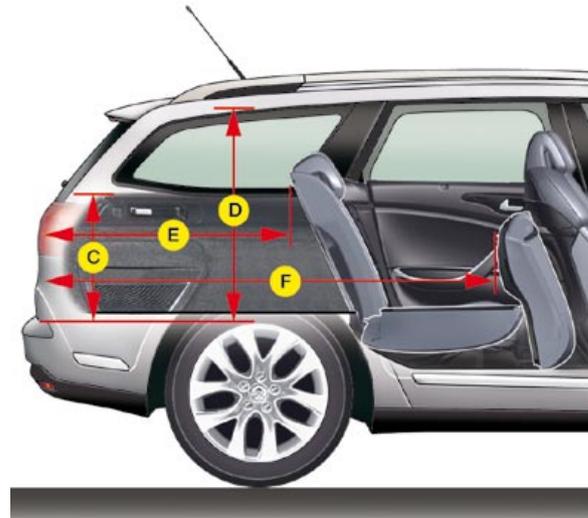
A	2 815
B	1 054
C	959
D	4 829
E	1 586
F	2 096
G	1 557
H	1 860
I*	1 479

* Without roof bars.



Interior (Tourer)

A	1 060
B	1 115
C	510
D	851
E	1 058
F	1 723



IDENTIFICATION FEATURES

Various visible marking devices for identification and tracking of the vehicle.

The vehicle type and the identification number are also indicated on the registration document.

All CITROËN original replacement parts are available exclusively within the dealer network.

For your safety and in order to remain within the terms of the guarantee, you are advised to use only CITROËN replacement parts.

A. Chassis number plate

On the left hand door centre pillar.

1. EU type approval number.
2. Vehicle identification no. (VIN).
3. Gross vehicle weight.
4. Gross train weight.
5. Maximum weight on front axle.
6. Maximum weight on rear axle.

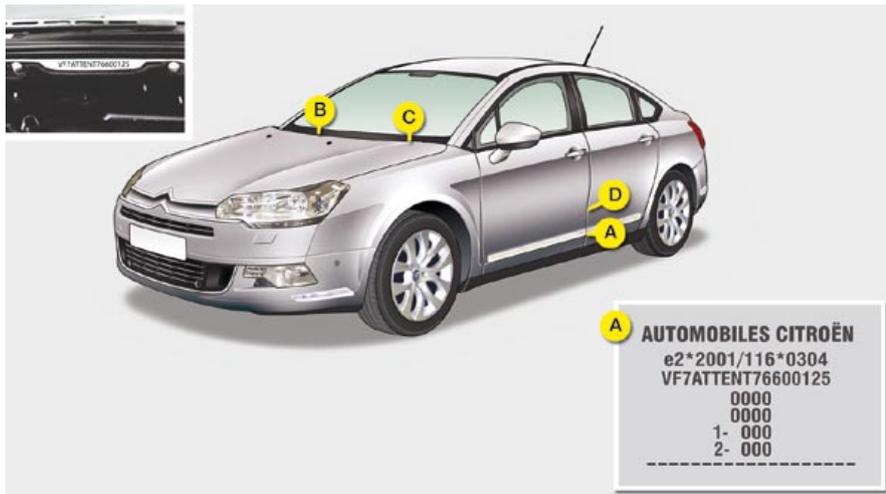
B. Body serial number

C. Serial number on dashboard

D. Paint colour code and tyre reference

Tyre pressure

On the left hand door centre pillar.

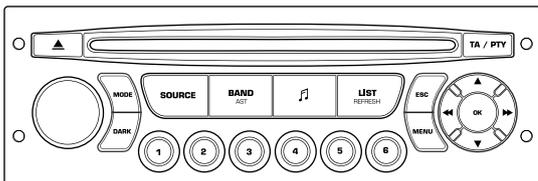


Observe the tyre pressures indicated by CITROËN.

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold.

Never deflate a warm tyre.

When changing tyres, it is imperative that the sizes recommended for your vehicle are used.



Autoradio

AUDIO EQUIPMENT/HANDS-FREE KIT



Your Autoradio is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. If it is to be installed in another vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer for configuration of the system.



For safety reasons, the driver must carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, your Autoradio may switch off after a few minutes.

CONTENTS

- **01 First steps** pg. 208
- **02 General menu** pg. 209
- **03 Audio** pg. 210
- **04 Hands-free kit** pg. 214
- **05 Control short-cuts** pg. 215
- **06 Configuration** pg. 216
- **07 Display flow chart** pg. 217
- **Frequently asked questions** pg. 218

01 FIRST STEPS



1. On/Off and volume adjustment.
2. CD eject.
3. Selection of the screen display mode.
4. Selection of the source: radio and CD and CD changer.
5. Selection of the FM1, FM2, FMast and AM wavebands.
6. Setting the audio options: front/rear balance, left/right balance, loudness, sound ambiances.
7. Displaying of the list of local stations, of the tracks on the CD or of the MP3 directories.
8. Abandon current operation.
9. TA (Traffic Announcement) function on/off.
Long press: access to the PTY (Types of radio Programme) mode.
10. Confirmation.
11. Automatic search for a lower/higher frequency.
Selection of previous/next CD or MP3 track.
12. Selection of a lower/higher radio frequency.
Selection of the previous/next MP3 directory.
13. Displaying of the general menu.
14. Buttons 1 to 6:
Selection of a stored radio station.
Long press: storing of a station.
15. The DARK button changes the display on the screen to improve driving comfort at night.
1st press: lighting of the top banner only.
2nd press: black screen display.
3rd press: return to the standard display.

GENERAL MENU 02

> MONOCHROME DISPLAY C



For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Display flow charts" section of this chapter.

AUDIO FUNCTIONS:
radio, CD, options.

TELEPHONE:
hands-free kit, matching,
management of a communication.



PERSONALISATION-CONFIGURATION:
vehicle parameters, display, languages.

03 AUDIO



The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

RADIO SELECTING A STATION



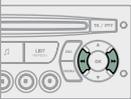
1  Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select the radio.



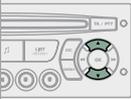
2  Press the BAND AST button to select a waveband: FM1, FM2, FMast, AM.



3  Briefly press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search of the radio stations.



4  Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search of the radio stations.



  Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of stations received locally (30 stations maximum). To update this list, press for more than two seconds.

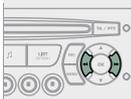


RDS

1  Press the MENU button.

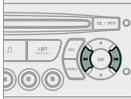


2  Select AUDIO FUNCTIONS then press OK.



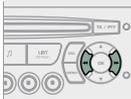
3  Select the FM WAVEBAND PREFERENCES function then press OK.

FM WAVEBAND PREFERENCES



4  Select ACTIVATE FREQUENCY FOLLOWING (RDS) then press OK. RDS appears on the display.

ACTIVATE FREQUENCY FOLLOWING (RDS)



! The RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by means of frequency following. However, in certain conditions, this RDS station is not followed throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

CD PLAYING A CD

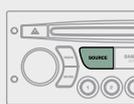


Insert circular compact discs only. Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player. Without pressing the EJECT button, insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

1



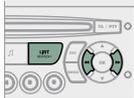
To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.



2



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD. Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of tracks on the CD. Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or rewind play.



MP3 CD PLAYING AN MP3 COMPILATION



Insert an MP3 compilation in the player. The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.



On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels. However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.

1



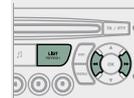
While the CD is being played, the directory flow chart is not followed. All of the files are displayed on a single level. To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.



2



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD. Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation. Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or rewind play.



03 AUDIO



MP3 CD INFORMATION AND ADVICE



The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1.2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3, is an audio compression standard which permits the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.



In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select standards ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet. If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly. It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality. In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.



The audio equipment will only play files with the extension ".mp3" with a sampling rate of 22.05 KHz or 44.1 KHz. No other type of file (.wma, .mp4, .m3u...) can be played.



It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.

CD CHANGER PLAYING A CD (NOT MP3 COMPATIBLE)

1



Insert the CDs in the changer one by one.

Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD CHANGER.



2



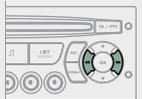
Press one of the buttons on the numeric keypad to select the corresponding CD.



3



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD. Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forwards or rewind play.



USING THE AUXILIARY INPUT (AUX) JACK/RCA CABLE NOT SUPPLIED



The auxiliary input permits the connection of portable equipment (MP3 player...). It is activated by default.

1

Connect the portable equipment (MP3 player...) to the audio sockets (white and red, RCA type) located in the glove box using a JACK/RCA audio cable.



2



Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select AUX.



ADJUSTING THE VOLUME OF THE AUXILIARY SOURCE

1

First adjust the volume of your portable equipment.



2



Then adjust the volume of your audio equipment.



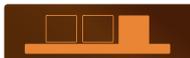
The controls are displayed and managed via the portable equipment.



04 HANDS-FREE KIT



MATCHING A TELEPHONE



For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for matching of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with your Autoradio's hands-free kit must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

- 1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and carry out a search of the Bluetooth accessories present for the telephone.



- 2 Select the accessory which corresponds to the name of the vehicle, a superimposed configuration display appears on the multifunction display.



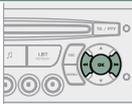
- 3 Enter the vehicle's authentication code (=1234). Depending on the telephone, you may be asked to enter this code before the superimposed configuration display appears.



- 4 Select the YES tab on the display using the buttons then confirm by pressing OK.



YES



The services offered by the hands-free kit depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used.

Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

A list of mobile telephones which offer the best range of services is available from the network.

Consult a CITROËN dealer.

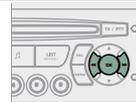
RECEIVING A CALL

- 1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display on the multifunction display.

- 2 Select the YES tab on the display using the buttons and confirm by pressing OK.



YES



Press the steering wheel control TEL to accept the call.



MAKING A CALL



Press the steering wheel control TEL to access your directory.



- 1 To dial a number, use the keypad on your telephone.



05 CONTROL SHORT-CUTS

STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



1. Activation/deactivation of the Black Panel mode (night driving).
2. Pick up an incoming call/hang up a call which is in progress.
Open the telephone menu and displaying of the call list.
Long press: refuse an incoming call.
3. Access to the short-cut menus in accordance with the display on the screen.
Confirmation of the function selected from a menu.
Rotation:
Selection of the previous/next stored RADIO station.
Selection of the previous/next CD or MP3 directory.
Selection of the previous/next CD in the CD changer.
4. Abandon the current operation.
Refuse an incoming call.
Long press: return to the main display.
5. Access to the main menu.
6. Volume increase.
7. Volume decrease.
8. Mute.



9. RADIO: automatic search for a lower/higher frequency.
CD/MP3/CD CHANGER:
selection of the previous/next track.
continuous press: fast forwards/rewind play.
10. RADIO: displaying of the list of stations available.
Long press: updating of the list of radio stations.
CD/MP3/CD CHANGER:
displaying of the list of CD and directory tracks.



06 CONFIGURATION



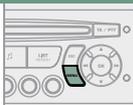
ADJUSTING THE DATE AND TIME



1



Press the MENU button.



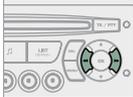
2



Using the arrows, select the PERSONALISATION-CONFIGURATION function.



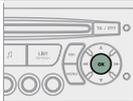
PERSONALISATION-CONFIGURATION



3



Press to confirm the selection.



4



Using the arrows, select the DISPLAY CONFIGURATION function.

DISPLAY CONFIGURATION



5



Press to confirm the selection.



6



Using the arrows, select the ADJUST DATE AND TIME function.

ADJUST DATE AND TIME



7



Press to confirm the selection.



8



Adjust the parameters one by one confirming by pressing the OK button. Next select the OK tab on the display then confirm.

OK



07 DISPLAY FLOW CHART monochrome C



1 AUDIO FUNCTIONS

2 FM BAND PREFERENCES

3 alternative frequencies (RDS)

4 activate/deactivate

3 regional mode (REG)

4 activate/deactivate

3 radio-text information (RDTXT)

4 activate/deactivate

2 AUDIO CD PREFERENCES

3 track random play (RDM)

4 activate/deactivate



1 PERSONALISATION-CONFIGURATION

2 DEFINE THE VEHICLE PARAMETERS*

2 DISPLAY CONFIGURATION

3 video brightness adjustment

4 normal video

4 inverse video

4 brightness (- +) adjustment

3 date and time adjustment

4 day/month/year adjustment

4 hour/minute adjustment

4 choice of 12 h/24 h mode

3 choice of units

4 l/100 km - mpg - km/l

4 °Celsius/°Fahrenheit

2 CHOICE OF LANGUAGE

* The parameters vary according to vehicle (refer to the "Multifunction displays" section).

** According to compatibility of Bluetooth telephone and service contract.



1 TELEPHONE

2 CONSULTING DIRECTORIES**

3 telephone directory

3 call log

3 services directory

4 customer contact centre

4 breakdown call

4 emergency call

2 CONFIGURATION

3 deletion of a match

4 list of matches

3 consulting matches

4 list of matches

3 choice of a mobile to connect

4 list of mobiles

2 MANAGEMENT OF A COMMUNICATION

3 switch**

3 terminate the current call

3 secret mode

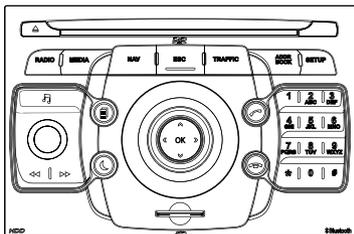
4 activate/deactivate

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The table below groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your Autoradio.

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD changer...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD changer...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	<p>The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play.</p> <p>The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to inadequate quality, certain recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND AST button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2, FMAST) on which the stations are stored.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
With the engine off, the audio equipment switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio equipment operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio equipment switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.



NaviDrive 3D

MULTIMEDIA AUDIO EQUIPMENT/BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE
GPS EUROPE

CONTENTS



The NaviDrive 3D is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. If it is to be installed in another vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer for configuration of the system.



For safety reasons, it is imperative that the driver carries out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the NaviDrive 3D switches off following the activation of the Energy Economy mode.

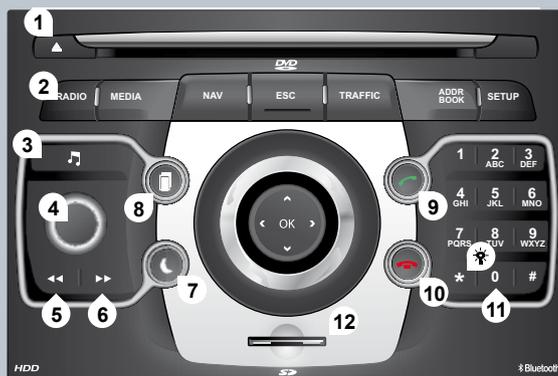


Certain functions described in this handbook will become available during the course of the year.

- **01 First steps** pg. 2
- **02 General operation** pg. 4
- **03 Navigation - Guidance** pg. 7
- **04 Traffic information** pg. 15
- **05 Radio** pg. 16
- **06 Music media players** pg. 17
- **07 Making a telephone call** pg. 22
- **08 Configuration** pg. 27
- **09 Voice commands**
and steering wheel controls pg. 28
- **10 Display flow charts** pg. 31
- **Frequently asked questions** central pgs.

01 FIRST STEPS

NaviDrive 3D CONTROL PANEL



1. CD eject.
2. RADIO: Access to the RADIO menu. Displaying of the list of stations in alphabetical order (FM waveband) or frequency order (AM waveband).
MEDIA: Access to the MEDIA menu (Audio CD, Jukebox, External Device). Displaying of the list of tracks. Change of source.
NAV: access to the NAVIGATION menu and displaying of the last destinations.
ESC: Abandon the operation in progress. Long press: return to the main display.
TRAFFIC: access to the TRAFFIC menu (function described in detail in sections 02 and 10).
3. Audio settings (Balance/Fader, Bass/Treble, Musical Ambience...).
4. Volume adjustment. Short press: mute.
5. Automatic search for a radio station on a lower frequency. Selection of the previous CD or MP3 track.
6. Automatic search for a radio station on a higher frequency. Selection of the next CD or MP3 track.
7. Normal display or black screen.
8. Selection of the successive displaying on the screen of MAP/NAV (if navigation is in progress)/TEL (if a conversation is in progress)/RADIO or MEDIA currently being played.
9. PICK UP: access to the TELEPHONE menu. With Bluetooth connection, accept an incoming call.
10. HANG UP: access to the TELEPHONE menu. Hang up the current call or refuse an incoming call, with Bluetooth connection, access to the TELEPHONE menu
11. Telephone numeric keypad, pre-selection of 10 radio frequencies.
12. SD card reader.

FIRST STEPS 01

NaviDrive 3D NAVIGATOR



13. OK: confirmation of the over-bright item on the screen.

- 4-direction navigator: press to the left/right:

When the RADIO screen is displayed: selection of the previous/next frequency.

When MEDIA is displayed: selection of the previous/next track.

When MAP or NAV is displayed: horizontal movement of the map.

- 4-direction navigator: press up/down.

When RADIO is displayed: selection of the previous/next radio station on the list.

When the MEDIA screen is displayed: selection of the previous/next MP3 directory or CD.

When MAP or NAV is displayed: vertical movement of the map.

Switch to the next or previous page of a menu.

14. Rotation of the ring:

When the RADIO screen is displayed: selection of the previous/next radio station on the list.

When the MEDIA screen is displayed: selection of the previous/next CD or MP3 track.

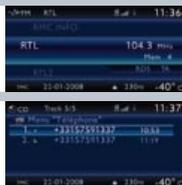
When MAP or NAV is displayed: front/rear map zoom.

02 GENERAL OPERATION

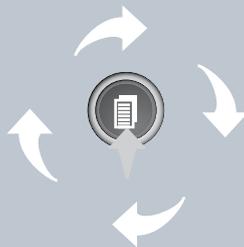
DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT

Press the MODE button several times in succession to gain access to the following displays:

RADIO/MUSIC MEDIA/VIDEO



TELEPHONE
(If a conversation is in progress)



FULL SCREEN MAP



NAVIGATION
(If navigation is in progress)



SETUP:

Access to the SETUP menu: system language and voice functions, voice initialisation (section 09), date and time, display, unit and system parameters.
Long press: access to the GPS coverage and to the demonstration mode.



TRAFFIC:

access to the traffic menu: displaying of the current traffic alerts.



MEDIA:

Audio DVD menu
Video DVD menu



For maintenance of the display, the use of a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) is recommended, without any additional product.



For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Display flow charts" section of this handbook.



GENERAL OPERATION 02

DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT



Pressing OK permits access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen.

NAV:

- 1 ABORT GUIDANCE
- 1 REPEAT ADVICE
- 1 BLOCK ROAD
- 2 CANCEL
- 2 LENGTHEN DIV.
- 2 SHORTEN DIV.
- 2 RECALCULATE
- 2 ZOOM/SCROLL
- 2 TRAVEL ROUTE
- 1 ROUTE INFO
- 2 SHOW DEST.
- 2 TRIP INFO
- 3 route type

- 3 avoidance criteria
- 2 satellites
- 3 stages info
- 2 TRAVEL ROUTE
- 2 ZOOM/SCROLL
- 1 VOICE ADVICE
- 1 ROUTE OPTIONS

TEL:

- 1 END CALL
- 1 HOLD CALL
- 1 DIAL
- 1 DTMF TONES
- 1 PRIVATE MODE
- 1 MICRO OFF

MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS:

- 1 TA
- 1 PLAY OPTIONS

- 2 NORMAL
- 2 RANDOM TRACK
- 2 TRACK INFO
- 1 SELECT MUSIC

RADIO:

- 1 IN FM MODE
- 2 TA
- 2 RDS
- 2 RADIOTEXT
- 2 REGIONAL PROG. (REG)
- 2 AM
- 1 IN AM MODE
- 2 TA
- 2 REFRESH AM LIST
- 2 FM

02 GENERAL OPERATION

DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT



MAP:

- 1 ABORT/RESUME GUIDANCE
- 1 SET DESTINATION/ADD STAGE
- 1 POIS NEARBY
- 1 POSITION INFO
- 2 OPTION
 - 3 guide to
 - 3 dial
 - 3 store position
 - 3 zoom/scroll
- 1 MAP SETTINGS
 - 2 2D MAP
 - 2 PERSPECTIVE
 - 2 3D MAP
 - 2 MAP ORIENT. NORTH
 - 2 MAP ORIENT. VEHICLE
 - 1 ZOOM/SCROLL

AUDIO DVD:

- 1 STOP
- 2 GROUP
 - 3 group 1 . 2/n
- 2 PLAY MODE
 - 3 normal/random track/intro
- 1 TA
- 2 SELECT MUSIC

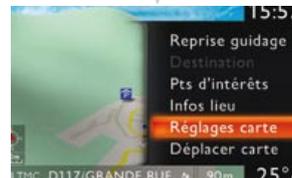
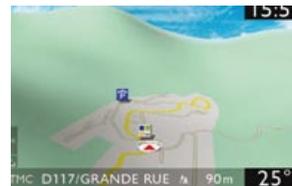
VIDEO DVD:

- 1 PLAY
- 2 STOP
- 2 DVD MENUS
 - 3 DVD menu
 - 3 main menu
 - 3 lists of titles
 - 3 chapters

DVD OPTIONS

- 2
- 3 audio
- 3 subtitles
- 3 angles

Example



03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

SELECTING A DESTINATION

The NAVIGATION voice commands are listed in section 09.

During guidance, a long press on the end of the lights stalk repeats the last guidance instruction.

1



Press the NAV button.



4



Select the NEW DESTINATION INPUT function and press OK to confirm.

NEW DESTINATION INPUT



The list of the last 20 destinations appears under the NAVIGATION MENU function.

2



Press the NAV button again or select the NAVIGATION MENU function and press OK to confirm.

NAVIGATION MENU



5



Once the country has been selected, turn the ring and select the town function. Press OK to confirm.



6



Select the letters of the town one by one confirming each time by pressing OK.



3



Select the DESTINATION INPUT function and press OK to confirm.

DESTINATION INPUT



A pre-set list (by entering the first few letters) of the towns in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.



It is possible to scroll the map using the 4-direction navigator. It is possible to select its orientation via the short-cut menu of the FULL SCREEN MAP. Press OK then select MAP SETTINGS and confirm.

7



Turn the ring and select OK. Press OK to confirm.



To speed up the process, the post code can be entered directly after selecting the POST CODE function. Use the virtual keypad to enter the letters and digits.

8



Repeat steps 5 to 7 for the STREET and N° functions.



Select the SAVE TO ADDRESS BOOK function to record the address entered in a directory file. Press OK to confirm the selection. The NaviDrive 3D permits the recording of more than 4 000 contact files.

9



Then select START ROUTE GUIDANCE and press OK to confirm.

START ROUTE GUIDANCE



10



Select the route type: FAST ROUTE, SHORT ROUTE or OPTIMISED ROUTE and press OK to confirm.



11



Select the road with the colour corresponding to the route chosen and press OK to confirm and start guidance.



It is also possible to select a destination FROM ADDRESS BOOK or FROM LAST DESTINATIONS, by selecting a junction, a town centre, geographic coordinates, or directly on the MAP.

FROM ADDRESS BOOK

FROM LAST DESTINATIONS

03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

ROUTE OPTIONS

When the map is displayed on the screen, you can select "map settings" then "flat map/map in perspective/3D map/North orientation/vehicle orientation". The displaying of buildings in 3D mode depends on the progress of the town mapping.

1



Press the NAV button.



2



Press the NAV button again or select the NAVIGATION MENU function and press OK to confirm.

NAVIGATION MENU



3



Select the ROUTE OPTIONS function and press OK to confirm.

ROUTE OPTIONS



4



Select the ROUTE TYPE function and press OK to confirm. This function allows you to change the route type.

ROUTE TYPE



5



Select the ROUTE DYNAMICS function. This function provides access to the TRAFFIC INDEPENDENT, SEMI-DYNAMIC and AUTOMATIC options.

ROUTE DYNAMICS



6



Select the AVOIDANCE CRITERIA function. This function provides access to the AVOID options (motorways, toll roads, ferries, tunnels).

AVOIDANCE CRITERIA



7



Turn the ring and select the RECALCULATE function to take into account the route options selected. Press OK to confirm.

RECALCULATE



ADDING A STOPOVER

Stopovers can be added to or deleted from the route once the destination has been selected.

1



Press the NAV button.



2



Press the NAV button again or select the NAVIGATION MENU function and press OK to confirm.

NAVIGATION MENU



3



Select the STOPOVERS function and press OK to confirm.

STOPOVERS



4



Select the ADD A STOPOVER function (5 stopovers maximum) and press OK to confirm.

ADD A STOPOVER



5



Enter a new address, for example.

NEW DESTINATION INPUT



6



Once the new address has been entered, select START GUIDANCE and press OK to confirm.

START GUIDANCE



7



Position the stopover on the list and press OK to confirm.



8

Repeat operations 1 to 7 as many times as necessary then select RECALCULATE and press OK to confirm.



To change the stopovers, repeat operations 1 to 3 and select OPTIMISE ROUTE (select a stopover, delete it or move it on the list using the ring to change the order, confirm its new position and finish with RECALCULATE).

03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

SEARCHING FOR POINTS OF INTEREST

The points of interest (POIs) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports...).

1



Press the NAV button.



2



Press the NAV button again or select the NAVIGATION MENU function and press OK to confirm.

NAVIGATION MENU



3



Select the SEARCH POINTS OF INTEREST function and press OK to confirm.

SEARCH POINTS OF INTEREST



4



Select the POI NEARBY function to search for POIs around the vehicle.

POI NEARBY



5



Select the POI NEAR DESTINATION function to search for POIs near the point of arrival of the route.

POI NEAR DESTINATION



6



Select the POI IN CITY function to search for POIs in the city required. Select the country then enter the name of the city using the virtual keypad.

POI IN CITY



A list of cities present in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.

7



Select the POI IN COUNTRY function to search for POIs in the country required.

POI IN COUNTRY



8



Select the POI NEAR ROUTE function to search for POIs near the route.

POI NEAR ROUTE



03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Zooming in on this icon shows the new POIs.



List of POIs

-  Service station
-  LPG station
-  Garage
-  CITROËN
-  Motor racing circuit
-  Covered car park
-  Car park
-  Rest area
-  Hotel
-  Restaurant
-  Refreshment area
-  Picnic area
-  Cafeteria

-  Airport
-  Railway station
-  Bus station
-  Port
-  Industrial estate
-  Supermarket
-  Bank
-  Vending machine
-  Tennis court
-  Swimming pool
-  Golf course
-  Winter sports resort
-  Theatre

-  Cinema
-  Camp site
-  Theme parks
-  Hospital
-  Pharmacy
-  Police station
-  School
-  Post office
-  Museum
-  Tourist information
-  Automatic speed camera*
-  Red light camera*
-  Hazardous location*

* according to availability in the country

03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

UPDATING THE HAZARDOUS LOCATION POIs

1



Download the HAZARDOUS LOCATION POIs update file onto an SD card or USB stick from the Internet. This service will be available on www.citroen.fr, www.citroen.co.uk then gradually deployed to all of the other countries.



2



Insert the medium (SD card or USB stick) containing the POI database into the system's SD card reader or USB reader.



3



Press NAV, select NAVIGATION MENU, then IMPORT POI.

NAVIGATION MENU

IMPORT POI



4



Select the medium (USB or SD card) used and press OK.



5

Successful downloading is confirmed by a message.

03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

SPOKEN INSTRUCTION SETTINGS

1



When the navigation is displayed on the screen, press OK then select or deselect **VOICE MESSAGE** to activate or deactivate the spoken guidance instructions. Use the volume button to adjust the volume.



3



Select the **SETTINGS** function and press OK to confirm.

SETTINGS



POINTS OF INTEREST AND HAZARD LOCATIONS SETTINGS

1



Press the **NAV** button.



2



Press the **NAV** button again or select the **NAVIGATION MENU** function and press OK to confirm.

NAVIGATION MENU



4



Select the **POI CATEGORIES ON MAP** function to select the POIs to be displayed on the map by default.

POI CATEGORIES ON MAP



5



Select **HAZARDOUS LOCATION POIs** to gain access to the **DISPLAY ON MAP**, **VISUAL ALERT** and **SOUND ALERT** functions.

HAZARDOUS LOCATION POIS



04 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

CONFIGURE THE FILTERING AND DISPLAYING OF THE TMC MESSAGES

The filters are independent and their results are concealed.

We recommend:

- a filter over 6 miles (10 km) around the vehicle in heavy traffic,
- a filter over 30 miles (50 km) around the vehicle or a filter on the route on motorway journeys.

1



Press the TRAFFIC button.



The list of TMC messages appears under the TRAFFIC MENU sorted in order of proximity.

2



Press the TRAFFIC button again or select the TRAFFIC MENU function and press OK to confirm.



TRAFFIC MENU

i



The TMC icon, at the bottom left of the screen, may appear in 3 different forms:

- No TMC station available,
- TMC station available, no message on route,
- TMC station available and messages on route (if guidance is active).

3



Select MESSAGE FILTERING and press OK to confirm.



4

Select the filter of your choice:

MESSAGES ON ROUTE

ALL WARNING MESSAGES

ONLY WARNINGS ON ROUTE

ALL MESSAGES



The messages appear on the map and on the list.

5



Select the FILTER BY DISTANCE function and press OK to confirm.

FILTER BY DISTANCE



6



By selecting an item from the list and confirming by pressing OK, the event appears on the map on the left with the detailed description of the event on the right. To exit press ESC.



05 RADIO

The external environment (hill, building, tunnel, underground car park...) may interfere with the reception, including in RDS following mode. This phenomenon is a normal result of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not in any way indicate a failure of the audio equipment.

SELECTING A STATION

1



Press the RADIO button to display the list of stations received locally sorted in alphabetical order. Select the station required by turning the ring and press to confirm.



While listening to the radio, press buttons ◀ ▶ for the automatic search for a lower or higher frequency.



When the RADIO screen is displayed, turn the ring or use the 4-direction navigator to select the previous or next station on the list.



Press one of the buttons on the numeric keypad for more than 2 seconds to store the current station. A bleep confirms that it has been stored. Press the button on the numeric keypad to recall the stored radio station.

RDS - REGIONAL MODE - TRAFFIC INFO

1

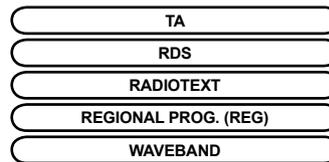


When the current radio station is displayed on the screen, press OK.



2

The radio source short-cuts menu appears and provides access to the following short-cuts:



3



Select the function required and press OK to confirm to gain access to the corresponding settings.



The RDS, if displayed, allows you to continue listening to the same station by means of the frequency following. However, in certain conditions, this RDS station cannot be followed throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

06 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

CD, MP3/WMA CD, MP3/WMA SD CARD/USB READER INFORMATION AND ADVICE



The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1,2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3 and the WMA format, an abbreviation of Windows Media Audio and the property of Microsoft, are audio compression standards which permit the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.



In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.

If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.



The audio equipment will only play audio files with the extension ".mp3" with a speed of between 8 Kbps and 320 Kbps and the extension ".wma" with a speed of between 5 Kbps and 384 Kbps. It also supports the VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other type of file (.mp4, .m3u...) can be played.



It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.



During play, exit the SD Card or USB source before removing the SD card or the USB stick from its reader.



To avoid any risk of theft, remove the SD card or the USB stick when you leave your vehicle with the roof open.

SELECTING/PLAYING CD, MP3/WMA CD, MP3/WMA SD CARD/USB READER

MP3 CDs, SD cards or USB peripherals are the compatible sources.

- 1** Insert the audio or MP3 CD in the player, the SD card in the card reader or the USB peripheral in the USB reader. Play begins automatically.



- !** The list of tracks or MP3/WMA files appears under MUSIC MENU.

- 2**  Press this button.



- 3**  When the MEDIA screen is displayed, turn the ring up or down to select the previous or next compatible source.



- 4**  Press the MEDIA button.



- 5**  Press the MEDIA button again or select the MEDIA MENU function and press OK to confirm.
- MEDIA MENU**



- 6**  Select the SELECT MUSIC function and press OK to confirm.
- SELECT MUSIC**



- 7**  Select the music source required. Press OK to confirm. Play begins.



- !** The playing and displaying of an MP3/WMA compilation may depend on the recording programme and/or the parameters used. We recommend the ISO 9660 recording standard.

06 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

VIEWING A VIDEO DVD

1

Insert the DVD in the player. Play begins automatically.



2



If the DVD does not appear on the screen, press the MODE button to gain access to the MEDIA screen which displays the DVD screen.



3



Press the MEDIA button to gain access to the DVD Menu at any time, or to the functions of the MEDIA Menu which adjust the video (brightness/contrast, image format...).



The 4-direction navigator and the chromed ring allow you to move the DVD selection cursor. Change chapter by pressing the **▶▶** or **◀◀** button.



Select the video source required (Video DVD, Auxiliary video input). Press OK to confirm. Play begins.

USING THE EXTERNAL DEVICE (AUX) AUDIO/VIDEO/RCA CABLE NOT SUPPLIED

1

Connect the portable equipment (MP3 player, camcorder, camera...) to the RCA socket (white and red for audio, red and yellow for video) in the glove box using a JACK/RCA audio cable.

2



Press the MEDIA button then press it again or select the MEDIA MENU function and press OK to confirm.



If the external device is not activated, select EXTERNAL DEVICE MANAGEMENT to activate it.

3



Select CHOOSE SOURCE then EXTERNAL DEVICE (video) and press OK to activate it.

EXTERNAL DEVICE



4



Select the AUX music source and press OK to confirm. Play begins automatically.



The displaying and management of the controls are operated via the portable equipment.

JUKEBOX COPYING A CD, A USB STICK OR AN SD CARD ONTO THE HARD DISC

1



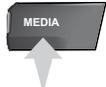
Insert an audio/MP3 CD, a USB stick or an SD card.



!

Check that the active MEDIA source is that of the medium used (CD, USB or SD card).

2



Press the MEDIA button. Press the MEDIA button again or select MEDIA MENU and press OK to confirm.



3



Select JUKEBOX MANAGEMENT then COPY and press OK at each step to confirm.

COPY



4



Select COPY FROM <selected medium> and press OK to validate.

COPY FROM <selected medium>



5



Select the tracks required then COPY SELECTION or select all of the tracks using COPY ALL.



6



Select NEW FOLDER to create a new folder or select an existing folder (created previously).

NEW FOLDER



7



ENTER FILE NAMES: select YES to change them or NO.

YES NO



8



To copy an MP3 CD, then select COPY WHILE LISTENING, FAST COPY/HIGH QUALITY (192 kBit/s) or NORMAL QUALITY (128 kBit/s) then select START COPY.

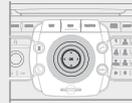


9



Confirm the warning message by pressing OK to start the copy.

OK



JUKEBOX RENAMING AN ALBUM

1



Press the MEDIA button.



2



Press the MEDIA button again or select MEDIA MENU and press OK to confirm.



3



Select the JUKEBOX MANAGEMENT function and press OK to confirm.

JUKEBOX MANAGEMENT

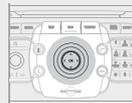


4



Select DELETE/RENAME and press OK confirm.

JUKEBOX



JUKEBOX LISTENING TO THE JUKEBOX

1



Press the MEDIA button.
Press the MEDIA button again or select MEDIA MENU and press OK to confirm.



!

Check that the active source is not the Jukebox in order to be able to rename or delete a track/directory.

2



Select JUKEBOX MANAGEMENT and press OK to confirm.



3



Select PLAY MODE and press OK to confirm.
Select FOLDERS AND FILES or PLAYLIST then press OK to confirm.



☀

Press the ESC button to return to the first file level.
Playlists can be created in the Jukebox.
MEDIA menu>Jukebox Management>Create playlist. Add the tracks required one by one then save the change. The Playlist play mode must then be selected.

07 MAKING A TELEPHONE CALL

CHOOSING BETWEEN THE BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE/INTERNAL TELEPHONE

1



To activate the Bluetooth telephone or the internal telephone, press PICK UP TEL.



2



Select TELEPHONE MENU, then SELECT TELEPHONE then choose between NONE, BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE or INTERNAL TELEPHONE. Press OK at each step to confirm.



!

The system can only be connected to one Bluetooth telephone and one SIM card (Internal telephone) at the same time. In this case, the phone book is synchronised with the Bluetooth telephone.

07 MAKING A TELEPHONE CALL

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

The services available via the telephone depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used. Refer to your telephone's manual and your operator to check which services you have access to. A list of mobile telephones which offer the best range of services is available from dealers.



For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the NaviDrive 3D must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

1

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function. The last telephone connected is reconnected automatically.



2



Press the TEL button.



3



If no telephone is connected, the system prompts you to **CONNECT PHONE**. Select **YES** and press **OK** to confirm.



The list of telephones connected previously (4 maximum) appears on the multifunction display. Select the telephone required then select **CONNECT PHONE** for a new connection. Select **DELETE PHONE** to cancel the connection to the telephone.

4



For a first connection, select **SEARCH PHONE** and press **OK** to confirm. Then select the name of the telephone.

SEARCH PHONE



5



Enter the authentication code on the telephone. The code to be entered is displayed on the screen.



Once the telephone has been connected, the NaviDrive 3D can synchronise the address book and the call list. This synchronisation may take a few minutes.

1



To change the telephone connected, press the **TEL** button, then select **TELEPHONE MENU**, then **SELECT PHONE** then **CONNECT BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE** then select the telephone required or **SEARCH PHONE**. Press **OK** at each step to confirm.



07 MAKING A TELEPHONE CALL

USING THE INTERNAL TELEPHONE WITH SIM CARD

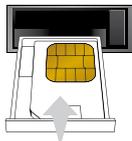
If you have declined to use the internal telephone for personal calls, you can still connect a Bluetooth telephone to receive your calls on the vehicle's audio system.

1



Extract the holder by pressing the eject button.

2



Install the SIM card in the holder and then insert it in the slot.

3

To remove the SIM card, repeat step 1.



For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the SIM card installation operations must be carried out when stationary.

1



Enter the PIN code on the keypad then select OK and confirm.

PIN CODE



When entering your PIN code, tick the STORE PIN tab to gain access to the telephone without having to enter this code when it is used subsequently.

2



The system asks **USE INTERNAL TELEPHONE FOR VOICE CALLS**, select **YES** if you wish to use your SIM card for your personal calls. Otherwise, only the emergency call and the services will use the SIM card.



Once the SIM card has been installed, the system can synchronise the address book and the call list. This synchronisation may take a few minutes.

RECEIVING A CALL

1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display on the screen.

2 Select the YES tab to accept or NO to refuse and confirm by pressing OK.



YES NO



The PICK UP TEL button accepts, the HANG UP TEL button refuses the incoming call.

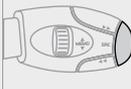
3 To hang up, press the HANG UP TEL button or press OK and select END CALL then confirm by pressing OK.



HANG UP TEL



Press the end of the steering wheel control to accept the call or end the call in progress.



MAKING A CALL

1 Press the PICK UP TEL button.



The list of the last 20 calls made and received in the vehicle appears under TELEPHONE MENU. You can select a number and press OK to make the call.

2 Select the TELEPHONE MENU function and press OK to confirm.



TELEPHONE MENU



3 Select DIAL NUMBER, then dial the telephone number using the virtual keypad.



DIAL NUMBER



It is also possible to select a number from the address book. You can select DIAL FROM ADDRESS BOOK. The NaviDrive 3D permits the recording of up to 4 096 entries.

Press the end of the steering wheel control for more than two seconds to gain access to the address book.

Warning, the emergency call and the services are only active if the internal telephone is used with a valid SIM card. With a Bluetooth telephone and without a SIM card, these services are not operational.

EMERGENCY CALL EXCEPT NaviDrive 3D CONTROL PANEL



In an emergency, press the SOS button until an audible signal is heard and a CONFIRMATION/CANCELLATION screen is displayed (if valid SIM card inserted). A call is made to the emergency services (112). In certain countries*, this emergency call is made directly by the CITROËN Emergency team which locates the vehicle and alerts the appropriate emergency services as quickly as possible.



If necessary, the internal telephone is activated automatically to make an emergency call.

* On condition that the CITROËN Emergency contract has been signed. This is free and of unlimited duration. Consult a CITROËN dealer.

CONSULTING THE SERVICES



Press this button to gain access to the CITROËN services*.



Select CUSTOMER CONTACT CENTRE to request any information about the CITROËN marque.

CUSTOMER CONTACT CENTRE



Select CITROËN ASSISTANCE to make a breakdown assistance call.

CITROËN ASSISTANCE



* These services and options are subject to conditions and availability.

08 CONFIGURATION

SETTING THE DATE AND TIME

This function provides access to the options according to the SETUP flow chart.

Principle of the GPS synchro:

1. Confirm the "GPS synchro" selection, the time is then set to GMT universal time, the date is also updated.
2. Using the 4-direction navigator, move to the time fields and press OK.
3. You can then use the ring to set the time to the time zone of your choice. Take care when changing between summer/winter time, the time zone must be changed again manually.

1



Press the SET UP button.



2



Select the DATE AND TIME function and press OK to confirm.

DATE AND TIME



3



Select the SET DATE AND TIME function and press OK to confirm.

SET DATE AND TIME



4



Set the parameters using the ring and move on to the next by moving the 4-direction navigator. Press OK to confirm.



5



Select the DATE FORMAT function and press OK to confirm. Select the format required using the ring and press OK to confirm.



6



Select the TIME FORMAT function and press OK to confirm. Select the format required using the ring and press OK to confirm.



Pressing the SET UP button for more than 2 seconds permits access to:

DESCRIPTION OF THE UNIT

GPS COVERAGE

DEMO MODE

09 VOICE COMMANDS AND STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS

C5 STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



1. Successive presses: "Black Panel" mode - black screen (night driving).



2. Short press to make a telephone call. Pick up/Hang up. Access the telephone menu. Display the call list. Long press to reject an incoming call.



3. Long press: update the list of stations received. Short press: activate the voice recognition. Long press: repeat the current navigation instruction.



4. Successive presses: provides access to the Radio and Media screen according to the current display.



3. Rotation: provides access to the short-cut menus according to the display on the screen. Short press: confirm the choice displayed on screen. Long press: return to the main menu.
4. Short press: abandon the current operation. Reject an incoming telephone call. Long press: return to the initial display.
5. Menu: provides access to the main menu.
6. VOL +: volume increase.
7. VOL -: volume decrease.
8. Successive presses: mute/restore sound.
9. Short press: Radio: higher frequency. Music players: next track. Long press for fast play.
10. Short press: Radio: lower frequency. Music players: previous track. Long press for fast play.
11. Short press: display the list of radio frequencies available or the list of tracks, albums, directories.



VOICE COMMANDS - VOICE RECO. INITIATION



1

Before using the system for the first time, you are advised to listen to, say and repeat the instructions for use.

2



Press the SETUP button and select the LANGUAGES AND VOICE FUNCTIONS function. Turn the ring and select VOICE RECO. PARAMETERS. Activate the voice recognition. Select INSTRUCTIONS FOR USE.



The phrases to be spoken according to the environment of the level 1 selection are indicated in level 2. Speak and NaviDrive 3D acts.



Long press: activates the voice recognition.

LEVEL 1	LEVEL 2	ACTION
	VOICE COMMAND	USE OF THE COMMAND
GENERAL	Help address book Help voice control Help media Help navigation Help telephone Help radio Cancel Correction	Access to the address book help Access to the voice reco help Access to the media management help Access to the guidance, navigation help Access to the telephone help Access to the radio help To cancel a voice command which is in progress Request to correct the last voice recognition carried out Clear
RADIO	Select station Station <tts:stationName> Read out station list Enter frequency Select wave band AM FM TA on TA off	Select a radio station Select a radio station using its RDS description <tts:station Name> from the RADIO list Listen to the list of stations available Listen to the frequency of the current radio station Choose the frequency waveband (AM or FM) Change the frequency waveband to AM Change the frequency waveband to FM Activate the Traffic Info (TA) Deactivate the Traffic Info
NAVIGATION	Destination input Voice advice off Voice advice on Save address Start guidance Abort guidance Navigate entry POI Search	Command to enter a new destination address Deactivate the spoken guidance instructions Activate the spoken guidance instructions Save an address in the address book Start guidance (once the address has been entered) Stop guidance Start guidance to a file in the address book Start guidance to a point of interest

VOICE COMMANDS - VOICE RECO. INITIATION



LEVEL 1	LEVEL 2	ACTION
	VOICE COMMAND	USE OF THE COMMAND
MEDIA	Media Select media Single slot Jukebox USB External device Changer SD-card Track <1 - 1 000> Disc <1 - 6> Folder <1 - 1 000>	Select the MEDIA source Choose a source Select the CD player source Select the Jukebox source Select the USB reader source Select the audio AUX input source Select the CD changer source Select the SD card source Select a specific track (number between 1 and 1 000) on the active MEDIUM Select a CD (number between 1 and 6) in the CD changer to be activated Select a Folder (number between 1 and 1 000) on the active MEDIUM
TELEPHONE	Phone menu Enter number Phone book Dial Save number Accept Reject	Open the Telephone Menu Enter a telephone number to be called Open the phone book Make a call Save a number in the phone book Accept an incoming call Refuse an incoming call
ADDRESS BOOK	Address book menu Call <entry> Navigate <entry>	Open the address book Call file using its description <file> as described in the address book Start guidance to an address in the address book using its description <file>

10 DISPLAY FLOW CHARTS



1 MAIN FUNCTION

- 2 CHOICE A
- 3 choice A1
- 3 choice A2
- 2 CHOICE B...

TRAFFIC

1 "TRAFFIC" MENU

2 MESSAGE FILTERING

- 3 all messages on route
- 3 warning messages on route
- 3 warning messages only
- 3 all types of message
- 3 filter by distance
 - 4 deactivated
 - 4 within a radius of 2 miles (3 km)
 - 4 within a radius of 3 miles (5 km)
 - 4 within a radius of 6 miles (10 km)
 - 4 within a radius of 30 miles (50 km)

2 READING OF MESSAGES

- 3 on consultation of the message
- 3 on reception of the message

2 TMC STATIONS INFORMATION

MEDIA

1 "MEDIA" MENU

2 SELECT SOURCE

- 3 audio CD/MP3 CD/audio DVD/video DVD
- 3 CD changer
- 3 jukebox
- 3 SD card
- 3 USB
- 3 external device (audio/video)

2 JUKEBOX MANAGEMENT

- 3 copy
- 3 create folder
- 3 delete/rename
- 3 edit playlists
- 3 play mode
 - 4 folders & files
 - 4 Playlist
- 3 memory status

2 AUDIO SETTINGS

- 3 refer to the "AUDIO SETTINGS" menu

2 VIDEO SETTINGS

- 3 display format
- 3 languages
- 3 display settings
 - 4 brightness
 - 4 contrast
 - 4 colours
- 3 video standard (AUX)
- 3 initialise video settings
- 2 EXTERNAL DEVICE (AUX) MANAGEMENT
 - 3 off/audio/audio and video



1 "RADIO" MENU

2 AM/FM WAVEBAND

3 FM waveband

3 AM waveband

2 SELECT FREQUENCY

2 AUDIO SETTINGS

3 refer to the "AUDIO SETTINGS" menu

1 "AUDIO SETTINGS" MENU

2 BALANCE/FADER

2 BASS/TREBLE

2 MUSICAL AMBIENCE

3 none

3 classical

3 jazz

3 rock/pop

3 techno

3 vocal

2 CUT OUT REAR SPEAKERS

2 LOUDNESS

2 AUTO VOLUME CORRECTION

2 INITIALISE AUDIO SETTINGS



1 "NAVIGATION" MENU

2 STOP/RESUME GUIDANCE

2 ENTER DESTINATION

3 enter new address

4 country

4 town

4 road

4 number

4 start guidance

4 post code

4 add to address book

4 junction

4 town centre

4 GPS coordinates

4 entering on map

3 guide me home

3 from last destinations

3 from address book

2 STOPOVERS

3 add stopover

4 enter new address

4 guide me home

4 from address book

4 from last destinations

3 optimise route

3 replace stopover

3 delete stopover

3 recalculate

4 fast route

4 short route

4 optimised route

2 SEARCH FOR POINTS OF INTEREST

3 nearby

3 near destination

3 in a town

3 in a country

3 along the route

2 GUIDANCE OPTIONS

3 guidance criteria

4 near destination

4 short route

- 4 optimised route
- 4 chargeable service

2 SETTINGS

- 3 route dynamics
 - 4 traffic independent
 - 4 semi-dynamic
 - 4 automatic
- 3 avoidance criteria
 - 4 avoid motorways
 - 4 avoid tolls
 - 4 avoid tunnels
 - 4 avoid ferries
- 3 recalculate



1 "ADDRESS BOOK" MENU

- 2 CREATE NEW FILE
- 2 DISPLAY AVAILABLE SPACE
- 2 EXPORT ADDRESS BOOK
- 2 CLEAR ALL VOICE DESCRIPTIONS
- 2 DELETE ALL FILES
- 2 CLEAR CONTENT OF "MY ADDRESSES"



1 "TELEPHONE" MENU

- 2 DIAL
- 2 CALL FROM ADDRESS BOOK
- 2 CALL LIST
- 2 MESSAGES
- 2 SELECT TELEPHONE
 - 3 none
 - 3 bluetooth telephone
 - 3 internal telephone
 - 3 connect bluetooth telephone
- 4 search phone
 - 5 disconnect phone
 - 5 rename phone
 - 5 delete phone
 - 5 delete all phones
 - 5 display details

2 SETTINGS

- 3 automatic voice mail
- 3 call signal
- 3 select ring tone
- 3 set ring volume
- 3 enter message service number
- 3 internal telephone settings
- 3 PIN settings
- 3 network selection
- 3 SIM card memory status



1 SETUP

2 LANGUAGES AND VOICE FUNCTIONS

3 languages

4 deutsch

4 english

4 espanol

4 français

4 italiano

4 nederlands

4 polski

4 portuguese

3 voice reco. parameters

4 voice recognition active

4 instructions for use

5 basic rules

5 example of use

5 tips

4 perso. voice programming

5 new programming operation

5 clear active programming

3 voice synthesiser volume

2 DATE AND TIME

3 set date and time

3 date format

3 time format

2 DISPLAY

3 brightness

3 colour scheme

4 steel

4 blue light (daytime only)

4 orange ray

4 blue flame

3 map colour

4 map in day mode

4 map in night mode

4 map auto day/night

2 UNITS

3 temperature

4 celsius

4 fahrenheit

3 Distance

4 km

4 miles

2 SYSTEM PARAMETERS

3 restore factory configuration

3 software version

3 scrolling text

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

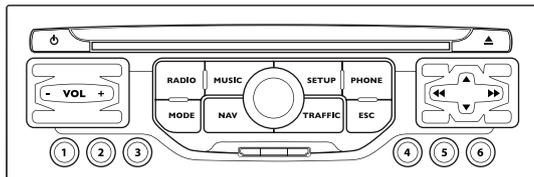
The table below groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the NaviDrive 3D.

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
<p>There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD, CD changer...).</p>	<p>For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD, CD changer...).</p>	<p>Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.</p>
<p>The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.</p>	<p>The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play.</p> <p>The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the Audio section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to inadequate quality, certain recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system. - The CD changer does not play MP3 CDs.
<p>The CD player sound is poor.</p>	<p>The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.</p>	<p>Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.</p>
	<p>The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.</p>	<p>Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.</p>

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...)	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press RADIO, select RADIO MENU then AM/FM WAVEBAND to return to the waveband on which the stations are stored.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function by means of the short-cut menu if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
<p>The TRAFFIC INFO box is ticked. However, certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.</p>	<p>On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.</p>	<p>Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (displaying of the traffic information symbols on the map).</p>
	<p>In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, ...) are listed for the traffic information.</p>	<p>This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.</p>
<p>The time taken to calculate a route sometimes seems longer than usual.</p>	<p>The performance of the system may slow down temporarily if a CD/DVD is being copied onto the Jukebox at the same time as a route is being calculated.</p>	<p>Wait until the CD/DVD has been copied or stop the copying before starting the guidance function.</p>
<p>Does the emergency call function work without a SIM card?</p>	<p>No, European regulations impose the presence of a SIM card in order to make an emergency call.</p>	<p>Insert a valid SIM card in the slot.</p>
<p>The altitude is not displayed.</p>	<p>On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.</p>	<p>Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites (long press on the SETUP button, then select GPS COVERAGE).</p>
	<p>Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, ...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.</p>	<p>This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the conditions of reception of the GPS signal.</p>
<p>The route calculation is not successful.</p>	<p>The exclusion criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).</p>	<p>Check the exclusion criteria on the NAV menu (GUIDANCE OPTION-EXCLUSION CRITERIA).</p>

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or SD card.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take a few seconds.	This phenomenon is normal.
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the equipment may not be visible.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. - Check that your telephone is visible.
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	A list of compatible Bluetooth mobile telephones is available from the dealer network.
The system does not play the DVD.	The region protection may not be compatible.	Insert DVDs which have compatible region protection.
I cannot copy the CD to the Jukebox.	The wrong source is selected.	Change the active source to CD.
	The CD is copy-protected.	It is normal that a protected CD cannot be copied.
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending of the SMS to the system.	Use your SIM card and the internal telephone.
	The SIM card used is a twin card.	Use the original SIM card to receive the SMS.



MyWay

MULTIMEDIA AUDIO EQUIPMENT/BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE
GPS EUROPE BY SD CARD



The MyWay is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. If it is to be installed in another vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer for configuration of the system.



For safety reasons, it is imperative that the driver carries out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the MyWay switches off following the activation of the Energy Economy mode.



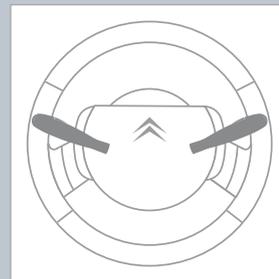
Certain functions described in this handbook will become available during the course of the year.

CONTENTS

- **01 First steps** pg. 2
- **02 General operation** pg. 4
- **03 Navigation - Guidance** pg. 6
- **04 Traffic information** pg. 13
- **05 Radio** pg. 14
- **06 Music media players** pg. 15
- **07 Bluetooth telephone** pg. 18
- **08 Configuration** pg. 20
- **09 Steering wheel controls** pg. 22
- **10 Display flow charts** pg. 24
- **Frequently asked questions** central pgs.

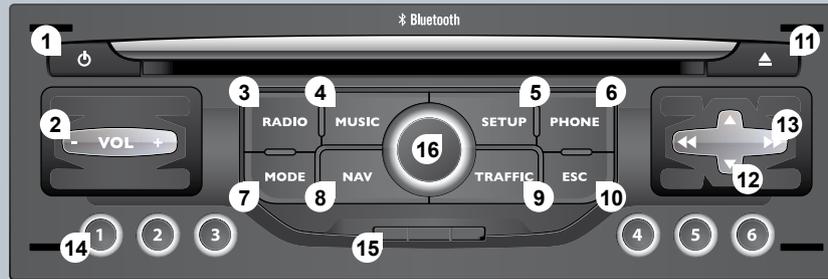
01 FIRST STEPS

MY WAY CONTROL PANEL



FIRST STEPS 01

MY WAY CONTROL PANEL



1. On/Off.
CD/SD card pause, mute for the radio.
Long press: reinitialisation of the system.
2. Volume adjustment.
3. Access to the RADIO menu. Displaying of the list of stations.
4. Access to the MUSIC menu. Displaying of the tracks.
- 3 - 4 Long press: access to the settings: front/rear and left/right balance, bass/treble, equalizer, loudness, automatic volume adjustment, initialise the settings.
5. Access to the SETUP menu.
Long press: access to the GPS coverage and the demonstration mode.
6. Access to the PHONE menu. Displaying of the call list.
7. Access to the MODE menu.
Selection of the successive displaying of:
Radio, Map, NAV (if navigation is in progress), Telephone (if a conversation is in progress), Trip Computer.
Long press: displaying of a black screen (DARK).
8. Access to the NAVIGATION menu. Displaying of the last destinations.
9. Access to the TRAFFIC menu. Displaying of the current traffic alerts.
10. ESC: abandon the operation in progress.
11. CD eject.
12. Selection of the previous/next radio station from the list.
Selection of the previous/next CD.
Selection of the previous/next MP3 directory.
Selection of the previous/next page of a list.
13. Selection of the previous/next radio station.
Selection of the previous/next CD or MP3 track.
Selection of the previous/next line of a list.
14. Buttons 1 to 6:
Selection of the stored radio station.
Selection of the CD in the CD changer.
Long press: storing of the current radio station.
15. SD card reader.
16. Dial for selection on the display on the screen and according to the context of the menu.
Short press: confirmation.

02 GENERAL OPERATION

Press the MODE button several times in succession to gain access to the following menus:

RADIO/MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

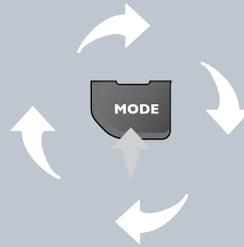


PHONE

(If a conversation is in progress)



TRIP COMPUTER



FULL SCREEN MAP



NAVIGATION

(If navigation is in progress)



SETUP:

system language, date and time, display, vehicle parameters, units and system parameters, DEMONSTRATION MODE



TRAFFIC:

TMC information and messages



For maintenance of the display, the use of a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) is recommended, without any additional product.



For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to section 10.

GENERAL OPERATION 02

DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT



A press on the OK dial to permits access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen.

NAV:

- 1 ABORT GUIDANCE
- 1 REPEAT ADVICE
- 1 BLOCK ROAD
- 1 ROUTE INFO
 - 2 show dest.
 - 2 trip info
 - 3 route type
 - 3 avoidance criteria
 - 3 satellites
 - 2 zoom/scroll
- 1 VOICE ADVICE
- 1 ROUTE OPTIONS

TRIP COMPUTER:

- 1 ALERT LOG
- 1 STATUS OF FUNCTIONS

PHONE:

- 1 END CALL
- 1 HOLD CALL
- 1 DIAL
- 1 DTMF TONES
- 1 PRIVATE MODE
- 1 MICRO OFF

MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS:

- 1 TA
- 1 PLAY OPTIONS
 - 2 normal
 - 2 random track
 - 2 repeat folder
 - 2 track intro
- 1 SELECT MUSIC

RADIO:

- 1 IN FM MODE
 - 2 TA
 - 2 RDS
 - 2 radiotext
 - 2 regional prog. (REG)
 - 2 AM
- 1 IN AM MODE
 - 2 TA
 - 2 refresh AM list
 - 2 FM

MAP:

- 1 ABORT/RESUME GUIDANCE
- 1 SET DESTINATION
- 1 POIS NEARBY
- 1 POSITION INFO
- 1 MAP SETTINGS
- 1 ZOOM/SCROLL

03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

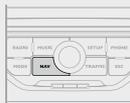
SELECTING A DESTINATION

Insert the SD card in the front panel reader and leave it there to use the Navigation functions.
The navigation SD card data must not be changed.
The map data updates are available from CITROËN dealers.

1



Press the NAV button.



The list of the last 20 destinations appears under the NAVIGATION MENU function.

2



Press the NAV button again or select the NAVIGATION MENU function and press the dial to confirm.

NAVIGATION MENU

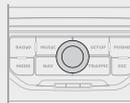


3



Select the DESTINATION INPUT function and press the dial to confirm.

DESTINATION INPUT

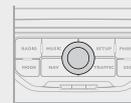


4



Select the NEW DESTINATION INPUT function and press the dial to confirm.

NEW DESTINATION INPUT



5



Once the country has been selected, turn the dial and select the town function. Press the dial to confirm.



6



Select the letters of the town one by one confirming each time by pressing the dial.



A pre-set list (by entering the first few letters) of the towns in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.



During guidance, pressing the end of the lights stalk repeats the last guidance instruction.

7



Turn the dial and select OK.
Press the dial to confirm.



To speed up the process, the post code can be entered directly after selecting the POST CODE function.
Use the virtual keypad to enter the letters and digits.

8



Repeat steps 5 to 7 for the STREET
and N° functions.



Select the SAVE TO ADDRESS BOOK function to record the address entered in a directory file. Press the dial to confirm the selection.
MyWay permits the recording of up to 4 000 contact files.

9



Then select START ROUTE
GUIDANCE and the press the dial to
confirm.

START ROUTE GUIDANCE



10



Select the route type:
FAST ROUTE, SHORT ROUTE or
OPTIMISED ROUTE and press the
dial to confirm.



It is also possible to select a destination FROM ADDRESS BOOK or FROM LAST DESTINATIONS.

FROM ADDRESS BOOK

FROM LAST DESTINATIONS



You can zoom in/zoom out on the map using the dial.
It is possible to scroll the map or select its orientation via the short-cut menu of the FULL SCREEN MAP. Press the dial then select MAP SETTINGS or ZOOM/SCROLL and confirm.

03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

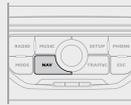
ROUTE OPTIONS

The route selected by the MyWay audio/telephone depends directly on the route options. Changing these options may change the route completely.

1



Press the NAV button.



2



Press the NAV button again or select the NAVIGATION MENU function and press the dial to confirm.

NAVIGATION MENU



3



Select the ROUTE OPTIONS function and press the dial to confirm.

ROUTE OPTIONS

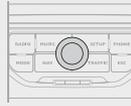


4



Select the ROUTE TYPE function and press the dial to confirm. This function allows you to change the route type.

ROUTE TYPE

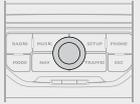


5



Select the ROUTE DYNAMICS function. This function provides access to the TRAFFIC INDEPENDENT or SEMI-DYNAMIC options.

ROUTE DYNAMICS

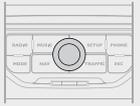


6



Select the AVOIDANCE CRITERIA function. This function provides access to the AVOID options (motorways, toll roads, ferries).

AVOIDANCE CRITERIA

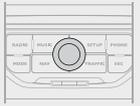


7



Turn the dial and select the RECALCULATE function to take into account the route options selected. Press the dial to confirm.

RECALCULATE



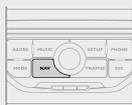
ADDING A STOPOVER

Stopovers can be added to the route once the destination has been selected.

1



Press the NAV button.

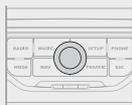


2



Press the NAV button again or select the NAVIGATION MENU function and press the dial to confirm.

NAVIGATION MENU



3



Select the STOPOVERS function and press the dial to confirm.

STOPOVERS

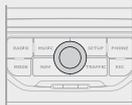


4



Select the ADD A STOPOVER function (5 stopovers maximum) and press the dial to confirm.

ADD A STOPOVER

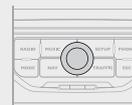


5



Enter a new address, for example.

ENTER A NEW ADDRESS



6



Once the new address has been entered, select OK and press the dial to confirm.

OK



7



Select RECALCULATE and press the dial to confirm.

RECALCULATE



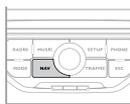
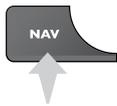
The stopover must be completed or deleted in order for the guidance to continue to the next destination. Otherwise, MyWay will always return you to the previous stopover.

03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

SEARCHING FOR POINTS OF INTEREST

The points of interest (POIs) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports...).

1 Press the NAV button.



2 Press the NAV button again or select the NAVIGATION MENU function and press the dial to confirm.



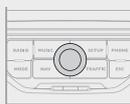
NAVIGATION MENU



3 Select the SEARCH POINTS OF INTEREST function and press the dial to confirm.



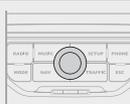
SEARCH POINTS OF INTEREST



4 Select the POI NEARBY function to search for POIs around the vehicle.



POI NEARBY



5 Select the POI NEAR DESTINATION function to search for POIs near the point of arrival of the route.



POI NEAR DESTINATION



6 Select the POI IN CITY function to search for POIs in the city required. Select the country then enter the name of the city using the virtual keypad.



POI IN CITY



A list of cities present in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.

7 Select the POI IN COUNTRY function to search for POIs in the country required.



POI IN COUNTRY



8 Select the POI NEAR ROUTE function to search for POIs near the route.



POI NEAR ROUTE



03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Zooming in on this icon shows the new POIs.



List of POIs

-  Service station
-  LPG station
-  Garage
-  CITROËN
-  Motor racing circuit
-  Covered car park
-  Car park
-  Rest area
-  Hotel
-  Restaurant
-  Refreshment area
-  Picnic area
-  Cafeteria

-  Airport
-  Railway station
-  Bus station
-  Port
-  Industrial estate
-  Supermarket
-  Bank
-  Vending machine
-  Tennis court
-  Swimming pool
-  Golf course
-  Winter sports resort
-  Theatre

-  Cinema
-  Camp site
-  Theme parks
-  Hospital
-  Pharmacy
-  Police station
-  School
-  Post office
-  Museum
-  Tourist information
-  Automatic speed camera*
-  Red light camera*
-  Hazardous location*

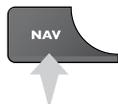
* according to availability in the country

03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

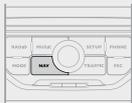
NAVIGATION SETTINGS

Contact a CITROËN dealer for details of the procedure for obtaining the HAZARDOUS LOCATION POIs.
The updating of the HAZARDOUS LOCATION POIs requires an SDHC (High Capacity) compatible reader.

1



Press the NAV button.



2



Press the NAV button again or select the NAVIGATION MENU function and press the dial to confirm.

NAVIGATION MENU

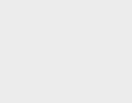


3



Select the SETTINGS function and press the dial to confirm.

SETTINGS

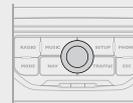


4



Select the NAVI VOLUME function and turn the dial to set the volume of each voice synthesiser (traffic information, alert messages...).

NAVI VOLUME



5



Select the POI CATEGORIES ON MAP function to select the POIs to be displayed on the map by default.

POI CATEGORIES ON MAP



6



Select HAZARDOUS LOCATION POIs to gain access to the DISPLAY ON MAP, VISUAL ALERT and SOUND ALERT functions.

HAZARDOUS LOCATION POIs



04 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

CONFIGURE THE FILTERING AND DISPLAYING OF THE TMC MESSAGES

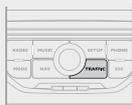
The filters are independent and their results are cumulative.
We recommend a filter on the route and a filter around the vehicle of:

- 2 miles (3 km) or 3 miles (5 km) for a region with heavy traffic,
- 6 miles (10 km) for a region with normal traffic,
- 30 miles (50 km) for long journeys (motorway).

1



Press the TRAFFIC button.



The list of TMC messages appears under the TRAFFIC MENU sorted in order of proximity.

2



Press the TRAFFIC button again or select the TRAFFIC MENU function and press the dial to confirm.



The TMC icon, at the bottom left of the screen, may appear in 3 different forms:

- No TMC station available,
- TMC station available, no message on route,
- TMC station available and messages on route (if guidance is active).

3

Select the filter of your choice:



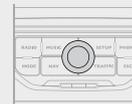
MESSAGES ON ROUTE

ONLY WARNINGS ON ROUTE

ALL WARNING MESSAGES

ALL MESSAGES

The messages appear on the map and on the list.
To exit, press ESC.



4



Select the GEOGRAPHICAL FILTER (NONE) function and press the dial to confirm.

GEOGRAPHICAL FILTER (NONE)



5



On the list which appears, select the distance radius required in accordance with the route.
Press the dial to confirm the selection.



05 RADIO

The external environment (hill, building, tunnel, underground car park...) may interfere with the reception, including in RDS following mode. This phenomenon is a normal result of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not in any way indicate a failure of the audio equipment.

SELECTING A STATION

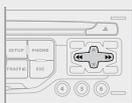
1



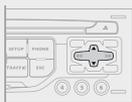
Press the RADIO button to display the list of stations received locally sorted in alphabetical order. Select the station required by turning the dial and press to confirm.



While listening to the radio, press one of the buttons to select the previous or next station on the list.



A long press of one of the buttons starts the automatic search for a station with a lower or higher frequency.



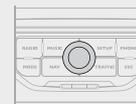
Press one of the buttons on the numeric keypad for more than 2 seconds to store the current station. Press the button on the numeric keypad to recall the stored radio station.

RDS - REGIONAL MODE - TRAFFIC INFO

1

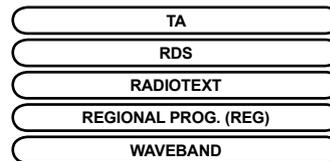


When the current radio station is displayed on the screen, press the dial.



2

The radio source short-cuts menu appears and provides access to the following short-cuts:



3



Select the function required and press the dial to confirm to gain access to the corresponding settings.



The RDS, if displayed, allows you to continue listening to the same station by means of the frequency following. However, in certain conditions, this RDS station cannot be followed throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

06 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

CD, MP3/WMA CD, MP3/WMA SD CARD INFORMATION AND ADVICE

If the GPS is used, the navigation SD card must remain in the MyWay audio/telephone reader. In this case, it is not possible to play an SD card containing MP3 files.



The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1,2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3 and the WMA format, an abbreviation of Windows Media Audio and the property of Microsoft, are audio compression standards which permit the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.



The audio equipment will only play audio files with the extension ".mp3" with a speed of between 8 Kbps and 320 Kbps and the extension ".wma" with a speed of between 5 Kbps and 384 Kbps. It also supports the VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other type of file (.mp4, .m3u...) can be played.



In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.

If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.



It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.



During play, exit the SD Card mode before removing the SD card from its reader.



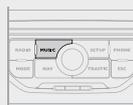
To avoid any risk of theft, remove the SD card when you leave your vehicle with the roof down.

SELECTING/PLAYING MUSIC CD, MP3/WMA CD, MP3/WMA SD CARD

1



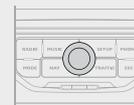
Press the MUSIC button.



4



Select the music source required:
CD, MP3/WMA CD, MP3/WMA
SD CARD... Press the dial to confirm.
Play begins.



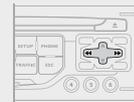
!

The list of tracks or MP3/WMA files appears under MUSIC MENU.

5



Press the up or down button to select
the next/previous folder.



2



Press the MUSIC button again or
select the MUSIC MENU function and
press the dial to confirm.

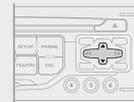
MUSIC MENU



6



Press one of the buttons to select a
music track.
Press and hold one of the buttons for
fast forward or rewind play.

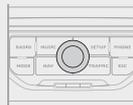


3



Select the SELECT MUSIC function
and press the dial to confirm.

SELECT MUSIC



The playing and displaying of an MP3/WMA compilation
may depend on the recording programme and/or the parameters
used. We recommend the ISO 9660 recording standard.

06 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

USING THE EXTERNAL DEVICE (AUX) AUDIO/RCA CABLE NOT SUPPLIED

1

Connect the portable equipment (MP3/WMA player...) to the audio sockets (white and red, RCA type) in the glove box using a JACK/RCA audio cable.

2



Press the MUSIC button then press it again or select the MUSIC MENU function and press the dial to confirm.

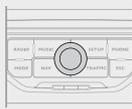


3



Select the EXTERNAL DEVICE function and press the dial to activate it.

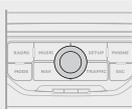
EXTERNAL DEVICE



4



Select the AUX music source and press the dial to confirm. Play begins automatically.



!

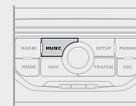
The displaying and management of the controls are operated via the portable equipment.

CD CHANGER PLAYING A CD (NOT MP3/WMA COMPATIBLE)

1



Insert one or more CDs in the changer. Press the MUSIC button.

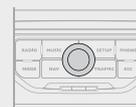


2



Press the MUSIC button again or select the MUSIC MENU function and press the dial to confirm.

MUSIC MENU

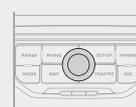


3



Select the SELECT MUSIC function and press the dial to confirm.

SELECT MUSIC

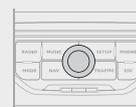


4



Select the CD CHANGER music source and press the dial to confirm.

CD CHANGER



5



Press one of the buttons on the numeric keypad to select the corresponding CD.



07 BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE



CONNECTING A TELEPHONE

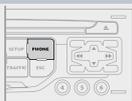
The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used. Refer to your telephone's manual and your operator to check which services you have access to. A list of mobile telephones which offer the best range of services is available from dealers.

! For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the MyWay must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function. The last telephone connected is reconnected automatically.



2  Press the PHONE button.



3  Select the TELEPHONE MENU function and press the dial to confirm.

TELEPHONE MENU



 The list of telephones connected previously (4 maximum) appears on the multifunction display. Select the telephone required for a new connection.

4  For a first connection, select **SEARCH PHONE** and press the dial to confirm. Then select the name of the telephone.

SEARCH PHONE



5  Enter the authentication code on the telephone. The code to be entered is displayed on the screen.



i Once the telephone has been connected, MyWay can synchronise the address book and the call list. This synchronisation may take a few minutes.

1  To change the telephone connected, press the PHONE button, then select **TELEPHONE MENU** and press the dial to confirm.



2  Select **CONNECT PHONE**. Select the telephone and press to confirm.

CONNECT PHONE



RECEIVING A CALL

1

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display on the multifunction display.

2



Select the YES tab to accept or NO to refuse and confirm by pressing the dial.

YES NO



3

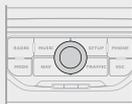


To hang up, press the PHONE button or press the dial and select END CALL then confirm by pressing the dial.

END CALL



Press the end of the steering wheel control to accept the call or end the call in progress.

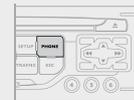


MAKING A CALL

1



Press the PHONE button.



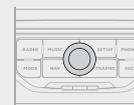
The list of the last 20 calls made and received in the vehicle appears under TELEPHONE MENU. You can select a number and press the dial to make the call.

2



Select the TELEPHONE MENU function and press the dial to confirm.

TELEPHONE MENU

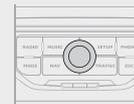


3



Select DIAL NUMBER, then dial the telephone number using the virtual keypad.

DIAL NUMBER



It is also possible to select a number from the address book. You can select DIAL FROM ADDRESS BOOK. MyWay permits the recording of up to 4 000 entries.



Press the end of the steering wheel control for more than two seconds to gain access to the address book.

08 CONFIGURATION

SETTING THE DATE AND TIME

This function provides access to the options: SYSTEM LANGUAGE, DATE AND TIME, DISPLAY (BRIGHTNESS, COLOUR, MAP COLOUR), VEHICLE PARAMETERS, UNITS, SYSTEM PARAMETERS.

1



Press the SET UP button.



2



Select the DATE AND TIME function and press the dial to confirm.

DATE AND TIME



3



Select the SET DATE AND TIME function and press the dial to confirm.

SET DATE AND TIME



4



Set the parameters one by one using the direction arrows and confirm by means of the dial.



5



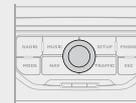
Select the DATE FORMAT function and press the dial to confirm.



6



Confirm the format required using the dial.
Select the TIME FORMAT function and press the dial to confirm.



Confirm the format required using the dial.
Pressing the SET UP button for more than 2 seconds permits access to:

DESCRIPTION OF THE UNIT

GPS COVERAGE

DEMO MODE

TRIP COMPUTER/VEHICLE PARAMETERS

VEHICLE DIAGNOSTICS

A FEW DEFINITIONS

1



- The "vehicle" tab:
The range, the current consumption and the distance remaining.
- The "1" (route 1) tab with:
The average speed, the average consumption and the distance travelled calculated over route "1".
- The "2" (route 2) tab with the same functions for a second route.



Each press of the button at the end of the wipers stalk displays the various trip computer data in succession, according to the display.

i

Range: displays the distance which can be travelled with the remaining fuel detected in the tank, in relation to the average consumption over the last few miles (kilometres). This displayed value may vary significantly following a change in the vehicle speed or the relief of the route. When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km). If, whilst driving, dashes are displayed continuously in place of the digits, contact a CITROËN dealer.

Current consumption: only calculated and displayed above 20 mph (30 km/h).

Average consumption: this is the average quantity of fuel consumed since the last trip computer zero reset.

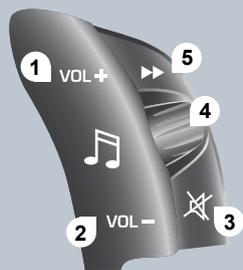
Distance travelled: calculated since the last trip computer zero reset.

Distance remaining to the destination: calculated with reference to the final destination, entered by the user. If guidance is activated, the navigation system calculates it as a current value.

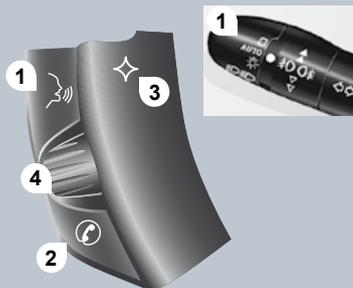
Average speed: this is the average speed calculated since the last trip computer zero reset (ignition on).

09 STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS

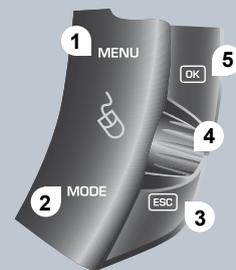
C4 STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



1. Volume increase.
2. Volume decrease.
3. Successive presses mute/restore the sound.
4. Rotation - associated with a pop-up.
Radio - access the 6 stored stations: higher or previous.
Music players: previous/next track.
5. Radio: next/previous station.
Music players: next track.



1. Press.
Repeat the current spoken navigation instruction.
2. Short press to make a telephone call.
Pick up/Hang up.
Access the telephone menu.
Display the call list.
Long press to reject an incoming call.
3. Personalisation
Short press to confirm the choice made using the dial.
4. Rotation.
Movement on the call list in the phone book.
Personalisation selection.



1. Short press: provides access to the menu according to the display on the screen.
2. Successive presses: provides access according to the current display on the screen
MAP/NAV (if navigation is in progress), TEL (if a conversation is in progress), RADIO or MEDIA in progress, Trip computer.
Long press: switch to black screen - Dark (night driving).
Touching a control restores the display.
3. ESC: abandon the current operation.
4. Rotation: selects the access to the short-cut menus according to the current display.
5. Confirms the choice displayed on the screen.

09 STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS

C5 STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



1. Successive presses: "Black Panel" mode - black screen (night driving).



2. Short press to make a telephone call. Pick up/Hang up. Access the telephone menu. Display the call list. Long press to reject an incoming call.



Press: repeat the current navigation instruction.



Successive presses: selection of the type of information present on the screen.



3. Rotation: provides access to the short-cut menus according to the display on the screen. Short press: confirm the choice displayed on the screen. Long press: return to the main menu.
4. Short press: abandon the current operation. Reject an incoming call. Long press: return to the initial display.
5. Menu: provides access to the main menu.
6. VOL +: volume increase.
7. VOL -: volume decrease.
8. Successive presses: mute/restore sound.
9. Short press: Radio: higher frequency. Music players: next track. Long press for fast play.
10. Short press: Radio: lower frequency. Music players: previous track. Long press for fast play.
11. Short press: display the list of radio frequencies available or the list of tracks, albums, directories. Long press: update the list of stations received.



10 DISPLAY FLOW CHARTS



1 MAIN FUNCTION

- 2 CHOICE A
- 3 choice A1
- 3 choice A2
- 2 CHOICE B...



1 "TRAFFIC" MENU

- 2 MESSAGES ON ROUTE
- 2 ONLY WARNINGS ON ROUTE
- 2 ALL WARNING MESSAGES
- 2 ALL MESSAGES
- 2 GEOGRAPHICAL FILTER
 - 3 none
 - 3 within 2 miles (3 km)
 - 3 within 3 miles (5 km)
 - 3 within 6 miles (10 km)
 - 3 within 30 miles (50 km)



1 "MUSIC" MENU

- 2 SELECT MUSIC
- 2 SOUND SETTINGS
 - 3 balance/fader
 - 3 bass/treble
 - 3 equalizer
 - 4 none
 - 4 classical
 - 4 jazz
 - 4 rock/pop
 - 4 techno
 - 4 vocal
 - 3 loudness
 - 3 initialise sound settings



1 "RADIO" MENU

- 2 WAVEBAND
 - 3 FM
 - 3 AM
- 2 MANUAL TUNE
- 2 SOUND SETTINGS
 - 3 balance/fader
 - 3 bass/treble
 - 3 equalizer
 - 4 none
 - 4 classical
 - 4 jazz
 - 4 rock/pop
 - 4 techno
 - 4 vocal
 - 3 loudness
 - 3 initialise sound settings



- 1 **"NAVIGATION" MENU**
- 2 **ABORT/RESUME GUIDANCE**
- 2 **DESTINATION INPUT**
- 3 **address input**
- 4 country
- 4 city
- 4 street
- 4 number
- 4 start route guidance
- 4 post code
- 4 add to address book
- 4 intersection
- 4 city district
- 4 geo position
- 4 MAP
- 3 **navigate HOME**
- 3 **choose from address book**
- 3 **choose from last destinations**

- 2 **STOPOVERS**
- 3 **add stopover**
- 4 address input
- 4 navigate HOME
- 4 choose from address book
- 4 choose from last destinations
- 3 **rearrange route**
- 3 **replace stopover**
- 3 **delete stopover**
- 3 **recalculate**
- 4 fast route
- 4 short route
- 4 optimised route
- 2 **POI SEARCH**
- 3 **POI nearby**
- 3 **POI near destination**
- 3 **POI in city**
- 3 **POI in country**
- 3 **POI near route**

- 2 **ROUTE OPTIONS**
- 3 **route type**
- 4 fast route
- 4 short route
- 4 optimised route
- 2 **SETTINGS**
- 3 **route dynamics**
- 4 traffic independent
- 4 semi-dynamic
- 3 **avoidance criteria**
- 4 avoid motorways
- 4 avoid toll roads
- 4 avoid ferries
- 3 **recalculate**



1 "TELEPHONE" MENU

- 2 DIAL NUMBER
- 2 DIAL FROM ADDRESS BOOK
- 2 CALL LIST
- 2 CONNECT PHONE
 - 3 search phone
 - 3 phones connected
 - 4 disconnect phone
 - 4 rename phone
 - 4 delete pairing
 - 4 delete all pairings
 - 4 show details
- 2 SETTINGS
 - 3 select ring tone
 - 3 phone/ring tone volume
 - 3 enter mailbox number



1 SETUP

- 2 SYSTEM LANGUAGE
 - 3 deutsch
 - 3 english
 - 3 espanol
 - 3 français
 - 3 italiano
 - 3 nederlands
 - 3 polski
 - 3 portuguese
- 2 DATE AND TIME
 - 3 set date and time
 - 3 date format
 - 3 time format
- 2 DISPLAY
 - 3 brightness
 - 3 colour
 - 4 pop titanium
 - 4 toffee
 - 4 blue steel
 - 4 technogrey

- 4 dark blue
- 3 MAP colour
 - 4 day mode for map
 - 4 night mode for map
 - 4 auto. day/night for MAP
- 2 VEHICLE PARAMETERS
 - 3 vehicle information
 - 4 alert log
 - 4 status of functions
- 2 UNITS
 - 3 temperature
 - 4 celsius
 - 4 fahrenheit
 - 3 Distance
 - 4 km and l/100
 - 4 km and km/l
 - 4 miles (mi) and MPG
- 2 SYSTEM PARAMETERS
 - 3 factory reset
 - 3 software version
 - 3 automatic scrolling

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The table below groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the MyWay.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD, CD changer...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD, CD changer...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	<p>The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play.</p> <p>The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the Audio section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to inadequate quality, certain recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system. - The CD changer does not play MP3 CDs.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiances) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
<p>The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).</p>	<p>The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.</p>	<p>Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.</p>
	<p>The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.</p>	<p>This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.</p>
	<p>The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).</p>	<p>Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.</p>
<p>Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.</p>	<p>During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.</p>	<p>Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.</p>
<p>With the engine off, the audio equipment switches off after a few minutes of use.</p>	<p>When the engine is switched off, the audio equipment operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.</p>	<p>Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.</p>

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
<p>The TRAFFIC INFO box is ticked. However, certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.</p>	<p>On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.</p>	<p>Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (displaying of the traffic information symbols on the map).</p>
	<p>In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, ...) are listed for the traffic information.</p>	<p>This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.</p>
<p>The time taken to calculate a route sometimes seems longer than usual.</p>	<p>The performance of the system may slow down temporarily if a CD/DVD is being copied onto the Jukebox at the same time as a route is being calculated.</p>	<p>Wait until the CD/DVD has been copied or stop the copying before starting the guidance function.</p>
<p>The altitude is not displayed.</p>	<p>On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.</p>	<p>Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites (long press on the MENU button, then select AUDIO/TELEPHONE DIAGNOSTICS, then GPS COVERAGE).</p>
	<p>Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, ...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.</p>	<p>This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the conditions of reception of the GPS signal.</p>
<p>The route calculation is not successful.</p>	<p>The exclusion criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).</p>	<p>Check the exclusion criteria.</p>
<p>There is a long waiting time after inserting a CD or SD card.</p>	<p>When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take a few seconds.</p>	<p>This phenomenon is normal.</p>
<p>I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.</p>	<p>The telephone's Bluetooth function may be deactivated or the equipment may not be visible.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is activated. - Check that your telephone is visible.